

# Connect 6

**First Term** 

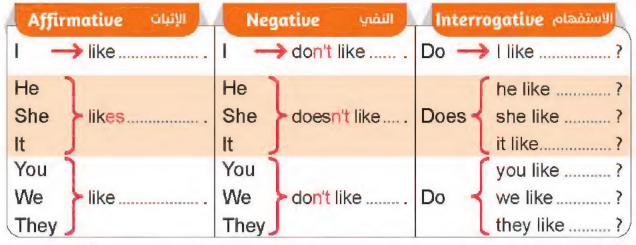




# Revision on Primary (5) "Connect (5) Grammar Revision"

مراجعة على أهم قواعد (Connect 5)

## The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط



 تُستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لنعبر عن كم مرة نقوم بعمل شيء ما.

	always	often	usually	sometimes	never
1	_				

## **1**

### Choose the correct answer:

- I (catch catches catching) the bus every morning.
- 2. My mother always (cooks cooking cook) delicious food.
- 3. Mrs Mona (work works working) at a language school.
- 4. What (does do doing) you usually do in the evening?
- 5. Nadia (go goes going) to school by car.
- 6. (Do Does Are) you like speaking English?
- 7. My sisters (do does doing) the homework at night.
- 8. We usually (eat eating eats) yogurt for breakfast.
- Mom (has have is having) a sharp knife to cut the vegetables.
- My boss (ask asking asks) me to do some jobs.

- 11. (Do Does Is) Ahlam like fish?
- 12. (Do Does Are) you like reading books?
- 13. How often (do does doing) you go to the club?
- 14. How often (do does doing) Yassin tidy his room?
- 15. Amgad (always has has always always have) a nice smile.
- 16. Hagar (is never never is are never) late for school.



### was

I - He - She - It - Singular (أي اسم مفرد)

### were

You - We - They - Plural (أي اسم جمع)

## The Past Simple Tense

زمـن الماضي البسيط



### 🔾 يوجد كلمات دالة على زمن الماضي البسيط مثل:

yesterday	أمس	in the past	في الماضي
ago	منذ	last (week)	الأسبوع (الماضي)

Connect 6⊢ 5

### Revision )

## 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Yesterday, my cousin (comes came come) to visit us.
- 2. I was late because I (miss missed missing) the train.
- 3. My grandma (go goes went) to Alexandria two days ago.
- 4. They (eating ate eats) pizza at a restaurant in the square.
- 5. We (had have has) a great time and enjoyed a lot.
- 6. What did he (eats eating eat) for lunch?
- 7. Did she (go goes went) to Aswan last week?
- 8. How (does did done) you feel about the new theater?
- 9. It (start starts started) to rain an hour ago.
- 10. I (don't didn't doesn't) see you last week.
- 11. Where did she (go goes went) last weekend?
- 12. He didn't (came coming come) with us because he was tired.

## 3 Change into negative:

- I came late yesterday.
- They went to school yesterday.
- 3. I arrived on time.
- 4. We were happy in the garden.
- She ate pasta an hour ago.

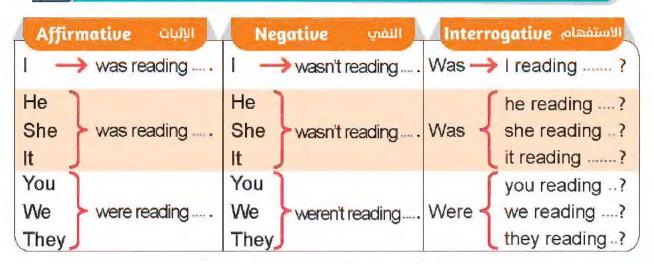
## Make correct questions:

1. I went to the park yesterday.

?

- They helped their mother last week.
- 3. We played football at the club.
- 4. Yes, I was happy.
  - · ......?
- 5. No, she wasn't at the zoo.

## زمن الماضي المستمر The Past Continuous Tense



🔿 يُعَبِّر عن حدث وقع في الماضي واستغرق حدوثه فترة من الوقت.

- She was helping her mom on Friday morning.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:
  - 1. Ramy (is was were) fishing last week.
  - 2. Was he (study studies studying) English with his dad?
  - 3. My father was (work works working) all day yesterday.
  - 4. (Was Were Is) he having breakfast at ten yesterday?
  - 5. What (are were was) you doing at 8 pm yesterday?
  - 6. (Was Were Am) you reading a story at five the day before?

Connect 6+

### Revision

- 7. We (was were are) having a great time at the garden.
- 8. The tiger (was were is) running at the forest.
- 9. Was she (help helps helping) her mother at the kitchen?
- 10. Were they (play playing played) tennis at five in the afternoon?
- 11. What were you (do does doing) yesterday?
- 12. (Does Are Was) he swimming all day?
- 13. I was (listen listened listening) to the radio when my mom entered my room.
- 14. Some geese (were was is) swimming in the pond.
- 15. My father (was is were) doing his work when the light went off.

## 6 Write the correct word from the box:

#### was - were

- 1. The duck swimming.
- 2. The cats \_\_\_\_\_ running away.
- 3. the farmer growing vegetables?
- 4. They helping their mom.
- 5. My mom \_\_\_\_ cooking in the kitchen.
- 6. I watching TV when the light went out.
- 7. We walking in a beautiful garden.
- 8. they watching a match or a film?
- 9. Manar \_\_\_\_\_ taking a shower yesterday.
- 10. The students reading English at the class.
- 11. What they doing at the Nubian village?
- 12. Ahmed explaining what greenhouse gases are.

## any يعض some بعض

- We can use (some any) before countable or uncountable nouns.
- يمكن أن نستخدم (any some) قبل الأسماء التي تعد أو قبل الأسماء التي لا
   تعد.
- We use (some) in affirmative sentences and (any) in questions and negative sentences.
  - تُستخدم (some) في الجُمَل المُثْبَتة وسؤاليْ العرض والطلب، بينما تُستخدم (any) في الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية.
- When we offer or ask for something politely, we use the word (some) not (any).
  - تُستخدَم (some) بدلًا من (any) في الجملة الاستفهامية (السؤال) عند عرض شيء أو طلب شيء بأسلوب مهذب.

## 7 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. There (is are aren't) some milk in the glass.
- 2. There (is isn't aren't) any water in the bottle.
- 3. There (is isn't aren't) one carrot on the shelf.
- 4. Do you have (some any a) biscuits?
- 5. I would like (some any an) eggs.
- 6. Are there any (banana bananas a banana)?
- 7. There (is are aren't) some fruit and vegetables on the plate.
- 8. Is there (some any a) butter in the pan?
- 9. How about buying some (grapes grape a grape)?
- 10. There isn't (some any a) jam in the fridge.
- 11. She wants (a an some) onion.
- 12. Is there (a an any) pineapple on the table?
- 13. Do you like (some any a) sugar in your tea?
- 14. Can I have (some any a) juice, please?
- 15. Is there (a any an) jam in the fridge?

Connect 6 — 9

### Revision

- 16. Could you give me (some any a) salt, please?
- 17. Are there (some any a) tomatoes in the market?
- 18. Is there any (eggs dates cheese) in the fridge?
- 19. (Am Is Are) there any sugar in the supermarket?
- 20. Please, can I have some (apples apple an apple)?

## 8 Complete the following sentences with (some – any):

- 1. There are \_\_\_\_\_ oranges on the table.
- 2. Are there \_\_\_\_\_ figs in the market?
- 3. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in the cup?
- 4. There's \_\_\_\_ cheese in the fridge.
- 5. Are there \_\_\_\_ cups of coffee on the table?
- 6. He had ..... sandwiches for dinner.
- 7. Can you give me water, please?
- 8. There's juice in the glass.
- 9. Do you have eggs?
- 10. Would you like ..... orange juice?

## لأن because - لكي to

- O We can answer the questions that begin with (why) by using (to) or (because).
  - 🔾 يمكن الإجابة على السؤال البادئ بـ (why) باستخدام (to) أو (because).
- Why did she go to a restaurant? > To have a sandwich.
- Why did Dad come home early? Pacause he felt tired.

### Note that:

لاحظ أن:🕶

تُتبع (because) بجملة تامة بينما (to) تُتبع بمصدر الفعل، ومصدر الفعل هو

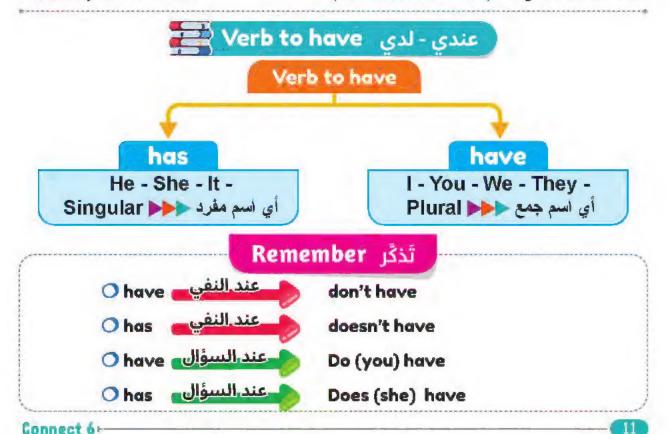
التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافات، أي بدون إضافة (..... s – es – ing – ed).



## (9)

### Choose the correct answer:

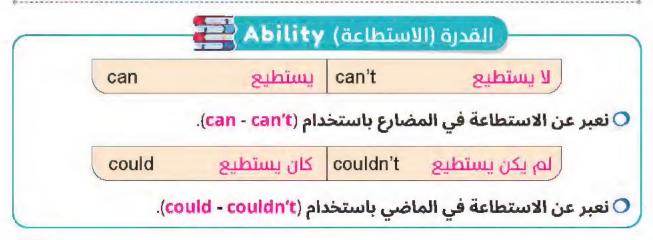
- 1. I went to bed early (because to so) I was tired.
- 2. My brother bought new shorts (because to so) wear at the beach.
- 3. Why is she running?
- (So To Because) she's late.
- 4. I went to the library (to because so) borrow a book.
- 5. Why do you go to the club? (Because To So) play with my friends.
- She bought a new suitcase (because pack to pack packs) her clothes.
- 7. I studied hard (to because so) get good marks.
- 8. Yassin went to the library (to because so) read books.
- 9. Why did May go to the kitchen? (It helps To help Because help) her mom.
- 10. I went to the hall (to get getting because get) my coat.
- 11. Amira bought sunglasses to (wear wears wearing) on sunny days.
- 12. Ehab went to the market (to so because) buy pasta.
- 13. My father bought a new phone (to so because) call his friends.
- 14. She looks like a princess (because to so) she is so beautiful.
- 15. Why is Adel sad?
- > (To Because So) he got bad marks.



### Revision

## (10) Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I (am has have) a headache.
- 2. We (are have has) a cold.
- 3. Does Shady (has had have) a cough?
- 4. She doesn't (has have had) cuts on her arms.
- 5. My mother (has have is) a toothache.
- 6. He (is do has) an earache.
- 7. Do you (has have are) a stomachache?
- 8. Does he (had have has) a cough?
- 9. Ahmed (don't doesn't isn't) have a headache.
- 10. You (are has have) a cold. Stay at home, please.



## 11 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I (can can't couldn't) fly a kite. It's easy.
- 2. I wanted to see the bats, but I (can't could couldn't).
- 3. (Can Could Couldn't) you make pasta? 
  No, I can't.
- 4. Penguins (can can't couldn't) swim very well. They like water.
- 5. (Can Can't Could) he get the full mark? > Yes, he could.
- 6. Can you (come came comes) with us?



- 7. I (can can t couldn't) buy that expensive car. I have no money
- 8. Could Taher (play played plays) the match yesterday?
- 9. What (can could can't) you do yesterday?
- 10. I (can can't am) speak French. It's so difficult.

## صيغة الأمر The Imperative

- Affirmative imperatives use the infinitive without (to):
  - 🔿 عند الأمر، نضع الفعل في المصدر في أول الجملة.
  - Open the door, please.

- Sit down, Ahmed.
- O Negative imperatives use don't + infinitive without to:
  - 🔿 عند النهي، نبدأ الجملة بـ (Don't) وبعدها الفعل في المصدر.
- Don't eat in the library.

🕩 Don't throw rubbish.

## (12) Choose the correct answer:

- 1. (Write Writes Wrote) your answer in short sentences.
- 2. (Don't eat Eat Eats) fruit and vegetables to stay healthy.
- 3. (Doesn't Don't Do) waste your time.
- 4. (Listening Listens Listen) to your teacher carefully in the class.
- 5. Don't (shouts shout shouting) in class.
- 6. (Come Comes To come) to school early
- 7. (Don't Doesn't Do) the housework with your mom
- 8. We will go to the park tomorrow. (Comes Coming Come) early, please.
- 9. (Don't Doesn't Do) eat in the class.
- 10. Don't (opens open opened) your notebooks. Look at the board.

## الظرف (الحال) The Adverb

- We make most adverbs by adding (ly) to the end of the adjective.
  - 🔿 عادة ما يتكون الظرف بإضافة (ly) للصفة.
- O The words "hard fast" can be used as adjectives and adverbs:
  - 🔿 كلمتي "hard fast" يمكن أن يتم استخدامهما كصفات وظروف.
- The adverb of the adjective "good" is "well":
  - الظرف من الصفة "good" هو "well".
- We use the adjective before a noun to describe it, but the adverb is used after a verb to describe it.
  - 🔿 الصفة تصف اسمًا وتأتى قبله، بينما الظرف يصف فعلاً ويأتي بعده.

## (13) Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The tortoise walks (slow slowly quick)
- 2. She can't run (slow quick quickly) in the street
- 3. I'm a (fast slowly quickly) rider.
- 4. He was (nervous quietly nervously) yesterday.
- 5. She speaks (nice happy nicely).
- 6. The teacher is shouting (loud angry angri y)
- 7. He is a (careful careful y carelessly) driver.
- 8. Wael can speak English (good well bad).
- 9. I can ride my bike (fast slow quick).
- 10. The boy is speaking (polite politely loud).





### Lesson



### We Work in the Community Garden

### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



apartment block قالمد-سنکس سنبم



community garden
ددیقة المحتمع - ددیقة محتمعیة



harvest (v)



<mark>plant (v)</mark> یزرع



سماد طبیعت سماد طبیعت



roof سطح



volunteers متطوعوں



neighborhood حيّ سكني

### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

chemicals	مواد كيميائية	in the middle of th	e city في وسط المدينة
organic	عضوي	in the market	في السوق
people's health	صحة النـس	project	مشروع
local area	منطقة محلية	make new friends	تُكوّن أصدقاء جدد

أطعمة Foods		
fresh food	vegetables طعام طازچ	خضراوات
fruit tree	peppers الشجرة غاكهة	فلفل
lemons	onions ليمون	بصل
dates	lettuce تمر - بلح	<u>ځ</u> س



### Chippedity | Up ha

### Regular verbs

### أمعال مبيظمه

	WILL STREET	
harvest	זכמו	harvested
plant	يزرع	planted
work	يعمل	worked
help	يشاعد	helped
need	يحتاج	needed
clean	ينظف	cleaned

want	يريد	wanted
listen	بستمع	listened
use	يستخدم	used
like	يحب	liked
live	پعیش	lived
produce	ئثيج	produced

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

Prusi		
am - ıs - ar	e يكون	was - were
do	يعمل - يفعل	did
have	يملك - عنده	had
read	يقرأ	read
go	يذهب	went
can	يسطيع	could
make	يصبع - يُعِدِّ	made

grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew
eat	يأكل	ate
sell	يبيع	sold
come	يأني	came
mean	ហកវ	meant
meet	يفابل	met
think	يعنمد - يفكر	thought

### Did you know?

'Urban greening' is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

يُعدّ "التحضير الحضري" جـزءًا مهمًا مـن تخطيط المـدن فـي العديـد مـن الـدول، وهـو يعنـي إنشـاء مسـاحانٍ مـن النباتـان والأشجار فـي المـدن. هـذه لمسـاحات بمكـن أن تكـون منتزهـات صعــرة بيـن الننابـات أو حداثـق علـــ أسـطح مـــارل الـــاس.



### Where does Maryam go on Fridays?

Nour : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

Maryam: Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday

afternoons at the community garden.

Nour : The community garden? What's that?

Maryam: It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's

apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables

to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

Nour : That's interesting. What things do you grow?

Maryam: Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce -

things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit

trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

Nour : And you grow all this food in the middle of the city. Wow!

Maryam: Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and

it's organic too, which means we only use natural fertilizer,

we never use chemicals.

Nour : Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

Maryam: Yes, it does. From just one square meter of roof garden,

we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great

place to meet people and make friends.

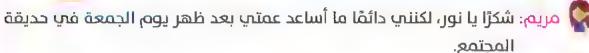
Nour : It sounds great Maryam. We need more community roof

gardens like that in our city!

### Lesson

### أبن تذهب مربق أباق الجمعة؟

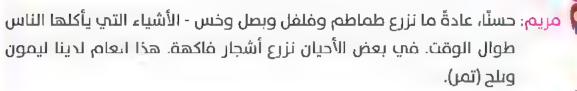




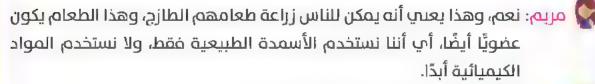








بور - وأنتم تزرعون كل هذا الطعام في وسط المدينة. واو!



🧣 يور : هل تُنتِج حديقتكم الكثير من الخضراوات؟

مريم؛ نعم. من متر مربع واحدٍ من حديقة السطح، يمكننا حَصْدُ عشرين كيلو جرامًا من الخضراوات سنويًا. وهذا ليس كل شيء؛ تساعد حدائق الأسطح كذلك علم تنقية الهواء في المدينة، وهذا أمر جيد لصحة الناس. كما أنها مكان رائع للمّاء الناس وتكوين الصداقات.

: يبدو هذا رائعًا يا مريم. نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من حدائق الأسطح المجتمعية كهذه في مدينتنا!

## he lesson notes

المقصود بكلمة "organic" هي المحاصيل التي تعتمد في زراعتها على الأسمدة الطبيعية، وعادةً ما يكون هذا النوع من الزراعة أقل إنتاجية من الزراعة غير العضوية، وأيضًا أعلى ثمنًا، ولكنه في نفس الوقت صحي أكثر للإنسان وأفيد لجسمه.

"inorganic سِعِير عفوري عملا المسكور

organic



## Exercises on Lesson

## 1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

### roof – plant – neighborhood – garden – apartment

Nour : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

Maryam: Thanks, Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons

at the community 1

Nour : What's that?

Maryam: It's a big green space on the ② of my Aunt

Salma's 3 block. The people who work there are

all volunteers from the 4 We grow vegetables

to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

### aunt – clean – friends – grow – plants – roof – sell – tomorrow

Nour asks Maryam to go to her house ① , but Maryam goes to help her ② on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the ③ of an apartment block. They ④ vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they ⑤ them, too Maryam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the ⑥ also help to ⑦ the air in the city, and the garden project is a good place to make new ⑧

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I live in a/an (villa tent apartment) on the fifth floor.
- 2. They are (volunteers workers gardeners). They take no money.
- You can see most of my town from the (door roof garden) of my apartment block. It's a very high building.



- 4. In the garden, we (plant harvest eat) lots of vegetables and they begin to grow quickly.
- 5. We use natural (sun fertilizers water) when planting organic food.
- 6. After they (water see harvest) the vegetables, they eat them or sell them at the market.
- 7. We never use (natural fertilizers chemicals water) when planting organic food.
- 8. My community is people who live in my (neighborhood school club)
- Read and match "A" with "B":

- 1. Where does she go on Fridays?
- We grow vegetables to eat,
- We use natural fertilizer.
- 4. Does your garden produce fruit?
- 5. Roof gardens also help

- a) We never use chemicals
- b) clean the air in the city
- c) They are all volunteers
- d) She goes to the community darden
- e) and sometimes we sell them in the market
- f) Yes, it does.
- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
  - 1. does Fridays go Where Maryam on?

  - 2. Fridays on I my aunt help always.
  - 3. vegetables to grow We eat
  - 4. you my house Do to come want to?

Connect 6⊦

- 5. them market in We sell the.
- 6. do What grow things you?
- 6 Punctuate the following sentences:
  - 1. thanks nour, but i always help my aunt on fridays
  - 2. it's on the roof of my aunt salma's apartment block
  - 3. we usually plant tomatoes peppers onions and lettuce
  - 4. where does mustafa go on tuesdays
  - 5. does your family have a garden
- 7 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Basma:

Tell her what you and the volunteers in your community do to help your neighborhood be cleaner and more beautiful, and to produce its needs of food. Your email address is <a href="mailto:farida@hotmail.com">farida@hotmail.com</a>. And your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:basma@gmail.com">basma@gmail.com</a>.

From

To :
Subject :



## Lesson 2 We Always Work Hard

## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



### Extra Vocabulary

### كلمات إضافية

Preposition		
on holding	at home في إجازة	في البيت
on weekends	قيدوبساًا سلامعاا يه <b>get to</b>	ي <mark>ص</mark> ل إلى
on Tuesday	סיה יהס ווגוגנוי <mark>py bus</mark>	بالانوبيس
over time	بمرور الوقت <b>find out</b>	يعرم - يكتشف
help with	ישס אבושין look after	العيس ا

Connect 6 23



## Other words

Join us	التحق بنا	urban locations	ً أماكن حضرية
Contact us	اتصل بنا تؤاضل معنا	green space	مساحة خضراء
latest news	آحر الأحبار	green areas	مىاطق خصراء
collect data	يجمع البيانات	foreign plants מותי	نباتات تُررع مي غير موطنها اا
information	معلومات	Earth Aid	مساعدة (إغاثة) الأرض
link	رابط (علم الإنترنت)	gymnastics com	مسابقة الحمياز   petition

naturally	logo طبيعتًا - تلقائيًا	شعار - لوجو
normally	رشكل طبيعمي <mark>research (n)</mark>	ىحث علمي
effects	عرض أفلاه، <mark>movie theater</mark> عرض أفلاه،	<mark>دار عرض سینمائی</mark> - دار

# -- Frank example and

## Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

Pres	ent	
join	يلتحق	joined
collect	يجمع	collected
call	يتصل	called
prefer	يُفصِّل	preferred
follow	يتبع - يتابع	followed
look after	تهیبن د	looked after

click	ينقر على	clicked
want	ترتر,	wanted
play	بعلي	played
live	يعيش	lived
offer	يعرض	offered
work hard	بعمل بحدٍّ	worked hard

## Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

- France		Pull
bring	يُحْصر	brought
give	<u>ं</u> फ्रकर्ग	gave
speak	يتكلم	spoke

Present		the state of the s
understand	യെവ്	understood
go	تڊهن	went
يعرف find out	يكتشف	found out



HOME

ABOUT

REQUEST INFO

ATEST NEWS

CONTACT US

a ·

### Earth Aid What is Mini Forest?

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.



At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

We also usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests over time. We collect data from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us. Click on the link to find out more.

### مساعدة (إغاثة) الأرض ما هي "ميني فورست"؟

"مينب مورست" هب منظمة تقوم برراعة مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في قلب مُدُننًا. تساعد هذه المناطق الخضراء الخاصة الباس على الاستمناع بالطبيعة.

مي منظمة «ميني فورست» الحياة البرية. نحن نعمل يجِدِّ دائما لتحديد الأماكن الحضرية المثالية لغابانيا، حيث يحتاج الباس والحياة البرية إلى الطبيعة أكثر من عيرها. نحن لا تزرع نباتات غريبة عن بيئننا في مشاريعنا، بل دائمًا ما نزرع أشجارًا تنمو تلقائيًا مي منطقة. ونحن نهتم بهم بحرص حتى يصبحوا غابة صغيرة.

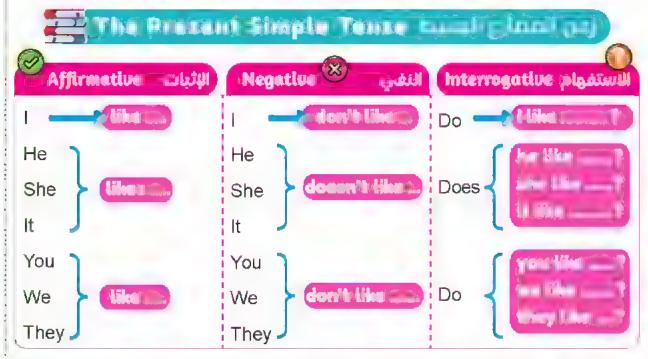
كما أينا نعمل مع المحتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغايات و لعناية بها يمرور الوقت. نحن نجمع بيانات من كل عابة نزرعها عدة مرات في الشهر. ويساعدنا هدا على فهم آثار المساحة الخضراء الحديدة على الناس والحباة البرية والمباخ في المنطقة بمرور الوقت.

نادرًا ما يكون لدبنا عدد كامٍ من المنطوعين للانصمام إلى حركة "ميني فورست"! لمساعدتنا في مشاربعنا، لذلك دائمًا ما نسعد عندما يتقدم لنا أشخاص لمساعدتنا". انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.

Connect 6- 25



# GRAMMAR TUDY



- We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.
  - ◄ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوث.
- O I visit my cousins every week.
- O He usually goes to school by bus.

## Adverts of frequency Jakille Jin

- We use some words with the present simple that are called (adverbs of frequency) such as:
- ◄ تُستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن المضارع البسيط، وتُسمى تلك الكلمات ظروف التكرار، مثل:

My dad always has dinner with us.

Mustafa usually plays with me.

**Mom often helps me with my homework.** 

I sometimes buy my mom presents.

We rarely go out after 10 pm.

We never travel to Alexandria by bus.

26

Step Ahead



### We use these words before the main verb or after (verb to be).

▼ تُستخدم هذه الكلمات قبل الفعل الأساسى أو بعد (verb to be).

- We usually play football on the weekend
- O Akram sometimes goes swimming with his friends.
- O I always watch TV in the evening
- O I don't often see my school friends on weekends.
- O Soha never helps in the kitchen.
- O Ahmed is always good to his friends
- O My dad and mom are rarely angry with me.







## How often

### ألب أن إن - كم عدد المرات

### We use (How often) to ask about the frequency of an action:

- ◄ نستخدم (How often) للسؤال عن تكرار حدوث فعل.
- ♦ نجيب على السؤال البادئ بـ (How often) بإحدى طريفتين:
- 1. إما باستخدام أحد ظروف التكرار (adverbs of frequency).
- O How often do you go to the club? I usually go to the club
- O How often does he walk to school? He never walks to school.
- O How often does she draw pictures? Nhe always draws pictures.

### 2. أو بذكر عدد المرات.

# We can use these time expressions to talk about how often we do something:

once a (week)	مرة فت (الأستوع)	three times a (year)	ثلاث مرات في (السية)
twice a (month)	مرتان في (الشهر)	every day	کل یوه

- O How often do you work in the community garden?
  - I work there two afternoons a week.
- O How often does she visit her grandma?
  - She visits her grandma twice a week.
- O How often do you brush your teeth? I brush my teeth once a day.
- O How often does he play football? He plays football three times a week

### Connect 6™



تعبير (every day) ظرف زمان، ويوضع إما في بداية الجملة أو في نهايتها.



- O How often do you buy sweets and chips?
  - l buy sweets and chips every day.
  - Every day, I buy sweets and chips.



1

### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

### wildlife - forest - areas - organization - nature

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Mini Forest is an organization which usually works with local communities to plant and look after the forests they plant over time. They collect data from every forest they plant a few times a month. This helps them understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area over time.

They rarely have enough people for all their projects, so they need more volunteers to join the Mini Forest organization!



## Choose the correct answer:

- 1. They collect data from every (tree forest garden) they plant.
- 2. They (rarely always often) have enough people for all their projects.

## Answer these questions:

- 3. Why does the Mini Forest Organization work with local communities?
- Who do they need to join to the Mini Forest organization?

## 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

### nature – cities – volunteers – location – spaces

Rania: Where are you going, Sagda?

Sagda: I'm going to the Mini Forest Organization

Rania: What is this organization?

Sagda: It's an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle

of our ①

Rania: How is that?

Sagda: They plant lots of areas and make them green 2

Rania: Awesome! How can they choose these areas?

Sagda: They always work hard to find the best urban locations for the

Mını Forests, where people and wildlife need 3 most.

Rania: What can I do to help them?

Sagda: They always need 4 for their projects. You can join them.

Rania: Yes. That's a good idea.

## Reorder the words to make correct sentences:



1. 10 pm - usually - in bed - before - I'm.

2. always - My dad - a healthy breakfast - in the morning - eats.

P

3. never - Donia and Wael - late - are - for school.

**4.** the dentist - you - go - How - do - often - to?

gives – sometimes – us – Our teacher – homework – on weekends.

D

rains – It – the Western Desert – rarely – in.

### 5 Choose the correct answer:



1. The weather is (usually - never) sunny in Egypt in summer

SB

2. I (rare y - often) eat dates as a snack. I love them!

SB

3. (How often - How ever) do you play football with your friends?

SB

4. Samer (always - never) plays video games, He doesn't like them very much.

SB

5. We (sometimes - always) go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach.

SB

6. You (rarely - sometimes) call me now. Are you angry with me?

SB

7. We don't like fish at all, We (often - never) eat it.

SB

8. My aunt lives with us, so I (often - rarely) speak to her.

SB



- 9. I (sometimes never) do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening.
- 10. Hani (rarely often) plays football. He doesn't like sports.
- SB
- **11.** My father (sometimes always) drives to work. There is no train or bus there.
- 12. (What Who How) often do you watch TV?
- 13. He (goes rarely rarely go rarely goes) out when it's cold
- 14. We (play usually usually play usually plays) together on Fridays.
- 15. She (isn't don't doesn't) get up late.
- 16. Hend (like likes liking) reading stories
- 17. We (know knows are know) everything about keeping animals
- 18. What sport does he (p ay plays playing)?
- 19. Lions (don't doesn't isn't) eat grass.
- **20.** She doesn't (eat eats eating) her sandwiches
- 21. Where (do does is) he go on the weekend?
- 22. She (never goes never goes never) to school late.
- 23. Soha (never is never is never) late for school.
- 24. How (many much often) does she visit her grandma?
- Twice a week.
- 25. It (never rain rains never never rains) in August.
- **26.** Ola and her sister (are a ways a.ways are is always) good to their teachers and friends.
- 27. How (many often much) do you brush your teeth?
- **28.** I (usually vis t visit usually usually visits) my grandparents every weekend.
- 29. She (often take takes often often takes) her pet animal to the park.



# Reading

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary

### Wael's Favorite Place in New York



floor طابق - دور



pass through يمر عبر



railway line خط سکة حدید



local residents سکان محلیون



hang out يتسكع - يخرج مع



species of plants أنواع نباتات



art works أعمال فنية



theater performance عرض مسرحي

### The Selfish Glant



setrish ياناني



giant عملاق



season appa



village قریة



wonderful garden حديقة رائعة



countryside فين



big wall جدار کبیر



**hole** فتحة - ثُقْب



empty فارع



corner رکن



branches غصون الأشجار



local children أطمال من سكان لمنطقة

### Extra Vocabulary

### كلمات إضافية

## Inepositions

make into	يُحوّل إلى	go out	ٰیخرج
on the sixteenth	floor فب الطابق السادس عشر -	come back	بعود بردع
at night	<u> </u>	on their way home	في طريفهم للبيت
wake up	يستيقظ	at home	<mark>مُن</mark> البيت
for a long time	لمترة طويلة	at the end of the story	ٍ فَي نهاية القَصة

### Other words

soft, green grass	عشب أحصر ناعم	tiny boy	صبي صئيل الحجم
lovely sound	صوت جمیل	quiet	ົທນ <mark>ໄລ</mark>
winter	الشتاء	silent	صامت
spring	الربيع	noisy	مزعج
miss home (v)	يمتمد الوطن	famous	مشهور
the days pass	تَمُرّ الأيام	great view	منظر رائع - إطلالة رائعة

Connect 6™



## SB Stutent عبرهات

pass through : goes from one place to another

railway line a road for trains

local residents: people who live in a neighborhood

: spend time with, relax together hang out

: feel sad that you can't have or see something miss

### Conductions for the control

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

#### Tresered. 700 miss ىۋتۇد missed relaxed relax يسترحي walked walk يمشي watched watch ىشاھد turn turned يتحول covered cover يعطي laughed laugh تعجك

#### Present Past climb up climbed up يتسلق opened open يمتح moved move يتحرك create ئىشىئ created taste tasted يتذوق share پشارك پتشارك shared arrive arrived

يضل

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

Pre	sent	
run	تخاث	ran
hang out	يحرج - يتسكع	hung out
tell	يُخْبِر	told
sing	يُعَنِّس	sang
build	شنت	built
fall	يقع يسقط	fell
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up

Prese	nt	Past
see	സ്പ്	saw
fly away	يطير بعيدً <mark>ا</mark>	flew away
write	يكتب	wrote
spend time	بقضب وقت	spent time
come back	تعود - تاخع	came back
stand	ىققى	stood
go out	يخرج	went out





# Pringistation :

	(Gh) = /0/		(s) = /s/
thumb	إصبع الإبهاه	sum	حاصل جمع - مسألة دسابية
think	يفكر يعتقد	sink	حوض يغوص
thick	طيمس	sick	مریض
throw	شەت - مېقى	50	दाग्र
mouth	فم	mouse	فأر
path	طريق	pass	يمر - يجتاز
thing	ديش	sing	يغني
thirsty	- عطشان	seed	پذرة
thanks	شکرًا	stalk	ساق النبات
bath	حوض الاستحمام، - حمام،	bus	حافلة - أتوبيس
thunder	عدا	sunset	غروب الشمس
threaten	يتوعّد - يُهدّد	sunny	مشمس

### The lesson notes

### ▶ the High Line

هو عبارة عن متنزه أخضر يبلغ طوله حوالي 2.5 كيلو مترًا، وهو طريق أخضر كان في
الماضي مسارًا لسكك حديد نيويورك المركزية، ويقع في الجانب الغربي من حيّ
مانهاتن في مدينة نيويورك الأمريكية.

### ▶1980s

المقصود بإضافة حرف (s) في نهاية التاريخ هكذا هو الإشارة إلى فترة الثمانينيات، أي منذ بداية عام (1980) وحتب نهاية عام (1989).

# Read and learn







Search

Hi Samer.

How are you? I'm well and New York is great! Our apartment block is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city.

New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also projects to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that no-one uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it?

Years ago, the High Line was a railway line 0, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some local residents of their decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space, with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It's 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theatre performance, eat delicious food, do a yoga class or go running, or just hang out 3 with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It passes through o our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. It's really cool. Here is one of my photos of it.

How are things in Alexandria? I miss 6 home. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.

و خط سکة حدید

🕗 السكان المحليون -سكان المنطقة

There are lots of different restaurants here in New York, ونخرج مع نتسكم مع Ork, عندرج مع نتسكم مع and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. The restaurants in Alexandria are better. I think the food is fresher and tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!

- نقصى وقتًا مع

भट जि 🔇

😏 بفتقد

Write soon and tell me all your news,

Wael



### The Selfish Giant

In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children



come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy

But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away.

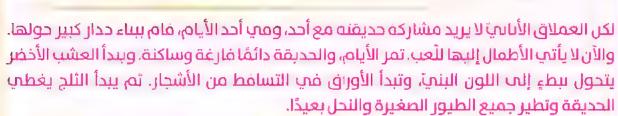
Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand, usually his garden is beautiful in spring. What is wrong? Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound. A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.

He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back through a hole in the garden wall. Now they are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

But in one corner of the garden it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why the spring didn't come," he says, "because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," he says, "good Things happen."

### THE RESERVE

في قرية في الريف، يعيش عملاق لديه حديقة خلّابة. وفي حديقة خلّابة. وفي حديقته أشجار عالية وزهور جميلة وعُشب أخضر ناعم. وطيور ملونه نغرّد علم الأشجار ونحل علم النبانات. بعد ظهر كل يوم، وفي طريق عودتهم من المدرسة إلى المنزل، يأتي أطفال القرية للّعب في حديقة العملاق. الحديقة الجميلة دائمًا ما تجعل الأطفال سعداء.



يحلّ الربيع على القرية، لكن لا بزال الشتاء سائدًا في حديقة العملاق. كل شيء تحت الثلج. والعملاق لا يفهم، فعادةً ما تكون حديقته جميلة في الربيع، ما المشكلة؟ ثم في صباح أحد الأبام، يستيفظ ويسمع صوتًا حمبلًا. طائر أزرق صغبر بغني على شجرة بالخارج. ثم يسمع العملاق صوتًا جميلًا آخر - أطفال يضحكون.

ينظر العملاق من النافذة ويرب أن الأطفال قد عادوا من حلال ثقب في جدار الحديقة. الآن هم جالسوں علم الأشجار، نعود الأوراق علم الأشحار إلم حصرتها مرة أحرم، وتتمنّح أرهار حولها. يشعر العملاق تسعادة غامرة لرؤية حديقته تنمو مرة أخرم.

لكن لا يرال الشتاء سائدًا فم أحد أركان الحديفة. يرم العملاق صبيًا ضئيل الحجم بقف هناك. إنه أصغر من أن يستطيع تسلُّق الشحرة. فجأة يفهم العملاق كن شيء. ويقول: "الآن أنا أعرف لماذا لم بأت الربيع، لأننب كنتُ أنانيًا نشأن حديقتي". بخرج العملاق ويساعد الطفل الصغير علم تسلُّق الشجرة. فجأة، تتفيّح جميع الأوراق على الشجرة وتطير الطيور إلى أغصانها وتبدأ في الغناء. عندما لا تكون أناني تتحقق الأشياء الجيدة.

## Del

For True/False exercises, first read the sentences carefully. Underline the key words and look for similar words in the text. Compare the information in the sentences and in the text, then choose your answer. للإجابة عنى تمارين الصواب / الخطأ، اقرأ الجُمَل بعناية أولاً. صع خطًا نحت الكلمات الرئيسية والحت عن كلمات مشابهة لها فب النص. قارن المعلومان الواردة في الجُمَل والنص، ثم اختر إجابتك.

## Exercises on Lesson



#### 1. The lovely garden always

- Our apartment is
- 3. The giant feels so happy
- 4. New York is very noisy,
- 5. In the garden, there are beautiful flowers e) but Alexandria is much quieter

#### It's still winter.

- b) to see his garden grow again.
- c) makes the children happy.
- d) and soft, green grass.
- f) on the sixteenth floor.

## Read and match "A" with "B":

#### 1. To pass through means

- 2. The railway line is
- 3. To hang out means
- Local residents are
- To miss means

#### a) people who live in a neighborhood.

- b) to spend time with, relax together.
- c) to go from one place to another.
- d) to feel sad that you can't have or see something.
- e) a road for trains.
- f) is much quieter.

#### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### create – famous – neighborhood – quieter – spaces

New York has a lot of green 1 There are also a lot of projects to ② new parks and green areas in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the 3 High Line. It passes through our (9) , so I often go there with my parents. It's really cool.

Connect 6™

# 4

#### Read and complete the words with "th" or "s":



# **(5)**

#### Read the following text and answer the questions below:

In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

### (A) Ch

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. In his garden, there are tall (flowers grass trees).
- 2. The lovely garden always makes the children (angry nappy hungry).

### Answer these questions:

- 3. Where does the giant live?
  - ......
- 4. What do the children do on their way home from school?

## 6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. spaces has New York of green a lot
- 2. Our is on the apartment fifth floor.
- 3. through You walk can the gardens.
- 4. is noisy a New York very city
- 5. There many aren't in parks New York.
- 6. garden happy children The lovely the makes.
- 7. giant The in lives village a.
- 8. tall the garden are There in trees.

## Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1. what is wael's favorite place in new york
- 2 no i don't want any more candy
- 3. let's have a picnic in the park north of giza
- 4. can you give me the blue crayon please



## (8)

#### Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A visit to Alexandria"

#### 🎮 lelewi ilu freip yani

last summer - Alexandria - parents - beaches - restaurants - library - enjoy - happy





# Lessons 4(5) Writing & Project

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary

#### Donia's Email to her Friend Laila in Luxo!



city center وسط المدينة



the third floor الطابق الثالث



in the distance من بعيد - في الأفق



honey عسل نحل



pretty yucky مقرف (مقزز) للغاية



Scottish food طعام إسكتلندي



Egyptian food طعام مصرب

#### **Extra Vocabulary**

كلمات إضافية

infographic	interesting مُخَطَّط معلومات بياني	ممتع - شيِّق - مثير للاهتمام
squares	שוגייט write back so	on راسلنى قريبًا

#### Countries and Famous Places

Egypt	חמת	The famous Edinburgh	Castle	قلعه إدىبرة الشهيرة
Scotland	إسكتلندا	The Meadows Park	(jg:	میدوز بارك (منتزه مید
Luxor	مدينة الأقصر			

Connect 6 - 43

#### How to write an email പ്രിവുന്നു പ്രവിശിക്കു പ്രവിശിക്കു







From: Donia@qwikmail.com

The receiver's email رالبريد الإلكتروس للمُرْسل إليه

To: Laj:a@egyptmail.com

The title of the email عنوان لموضوع رسالة البريد الإلكترويي

Subject: My new life in Scotland

Opening phrase عبارة افتتاحية

Hi Laila,

How are things with you?

I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad and Hani. It's really interestina!

Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees 3. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends 0, so there's always something to see there. In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle 6, too!

I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially the food! Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat pomidge of. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but it tastes pretty yucky 6! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames! The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school and we study together and sometimes we watch TV - in English!

Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love.

Closing phrase خاتمة

🚺 الحانب الآخر

🗿 ِطلالة رائعة على الأشجار 📵 مقابلة الاصدقاء

Donia

Signature توقيع

- 🚺 قلعة 🛭 و عصيدة حساء الشعير
  - 👩 مقرز للغاية

The email body



An informal email is a message you write to friends or family. An informal email should be friendly in tone, use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.

البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي هورسالة تكتبها إلى أحد الأصدقاء أو فرد من العائلـة. يجـب أن يكـون البريـد الإلكترونـي غيـر الرسـمي ودودًا فـي نبرتـه، وأن تُستحدم لغله عير رسميه فيله، وأن بتصملن عبارات افتتاحيـة وحتاميـة.

#### Phrases from the email and their function in the text:

- Opening phrase Hi Laila
- Closing phrase Lots of love
- How are things with you? A question to reader
- Please write back soon A request to reader
- Informal expressions a really cool park, it tastes pretty yucky

#### Exercises on Lesson





#### Read and match "A" with "B":

- 1. People use the park a lot for
- 2. Scottish food is OK, but
- 3. The people here are nice and
- 4. What does she miss about Egypt?
- Please write back soon and

- a) Egyptian food is better.
- b) The weather and the Egyptian food.
- c) tell me all the news from home.
- d) Lots of love.
- e) sports and meeting friends.
- I have a lot of new friends.

# **(2)**

#### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### floor - apartment - view - street - sports

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. are How with things you?
  - · ····· ?
- 2. apartment Our is the city in center.
- 3. have We view a great over the trees.
- 4. use for the park meeting friends People.
- 5. people porridge Scottish love eating.
- 6. have I of friends new a lot.

## Punctuate the following sentences:

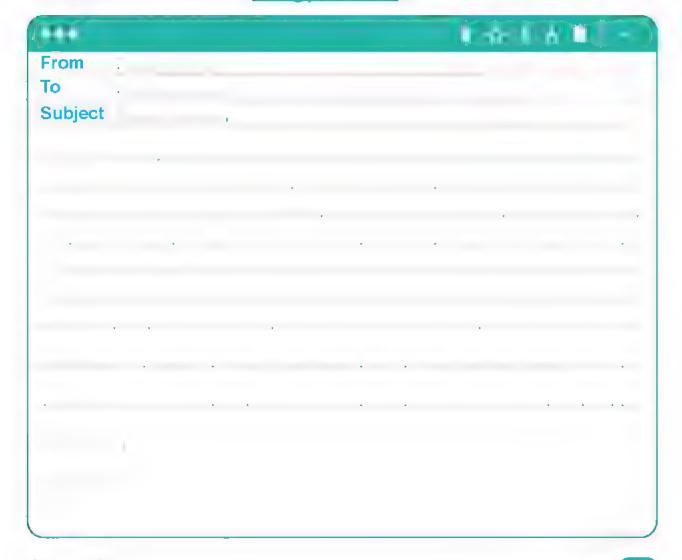
- 1. i m finally in scotland
- 2. what does she miss about egypt



- 3. she lives in london the capital of england
  - . .....
- 4. what s your favorite subject, nahla
- 5, i eat scottish food, but egyptian food is better

# Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hani:

Tell him about your new life in England. Write about two things that you miss about Egypt Your email address is <a href="mailto:fares@gmailcom">fares@gmailcom</a> And your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:hani@yahoo.com">hani@yahoo.com</a>



Connect 6™

# -Test-1 on Unit-1

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

ص الاستماع موجود صفحة (2**34)** آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Mini Forest plants trees in the middle of our (deserts cities roofs).
- 2. These special green areas help people enjoy (nature work crops).
- 3. They look after trees until they become a small (garden park forest).
- 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:(3Ms)

#### local residents - view - park - apartment

Samir: How are you, Wael?

Wael: I'm well, and New York is great!

Samir: Do you like your 10 ..... there?

Wael: Yes, so much Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we

have a great 2

Samir: What can you see from your balcony?

Wael: I can see the High Line

Samir: What is it?

Wael : It's a big, long 3 in New York

#### 3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- Uncle Hussein (usually go goes usually usually goes) to his work by bus.
- 2. How (many old often) does he play basketball?
  - He plays basketball every day at school
- 3. Mr Samır (ıs always always ıs are always) helpful
- 4. I go out with my friends twice (some a the) week

## Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Maryam works in a community garden. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the market, too! They usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes they also plant fruit trees. This year they have lemons and dates.

48



- 1. Maryam works in a community (park zoo garden) in her neighborhood.
- 2. The people who work there are all (volunteers workers gardeners)
- Answer these questions:
- 3. What vegetables do they usually plant?
- What fruit trees do they have this year?
- 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)
  - 1. grow eat to We vegetables.
  - 2 friends How often your see you do?
  - 3. do at Sham El Nessim usually do What you?
- 6 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)
  - no i don't want to go to the club on monday
- 7 Write an email to your friend Yousef: (5Ms)

Tell him about a trip you did in the summer holiday to one of the villages. Tell him about the different plants you saw there, the farm animals, and the friendly people you met. Your email address is <a href="mailto:maggy@school.net">maggy@school.net</a> And your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:yousef@hotmail.com">yousef@hotmail.com</a>.

From
To :...
Subject :

Connect 6

# -Test-2 on Unit 1

نصا الاستماع موجود صفحة (234) آخر الكتاب.





- 1. In a (town city vil age desert), in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden.
- In his garden there are tall (flowers grass walls trees).
- 3. Every (morning afternoon evening night), the local children come to play in the giant's garden

### 2 Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

(3Ms)

- 1. The garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block
- 2. The people who work there are all volunteers from the
- 3. They grow ..... to eat.

#### 3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 1. She (usually go goes usually- usually goes go usually) to the club.
- 2. We go to Alexandria once (some any a the) year.
- 3. How (many much old often) do you work in the community garden?I work there every weekend
- 4. My parents (are rarely rarely are is rarely have rarely) angry with me.

#### Read and match "A" with "B":

(5Ms)

#### A

- 1. In the garden, there are
- There are lots of different restaurants here,
- 3. We need more volunteers
- 4. Do you want to come to my house?
- 5. People use the park a lot for

a) Thanks, but I always help my aunt on Fridays.

B

- b) sports and meeting friends.
- c) birds singing in the trees.
- d) to join the Mini Forest organization!
- e) local communities.
- f) but the food doesn't taste like the food at home.

58



#### Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

The great forests of the world are very important. These forests are like oceans of trees. They are full of thousands of different kinds of plants and animals. However, we are cutting down the trees because we need wood and we need more land for food. So the world's forests are getting smaller. If these forests are cut down, a lot of plants and animals will disappear from the world. The land will look like deserts. Crops will not grow there. The weather will get very hot and the climate of the world will change.

# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. We cut down trees because we need more (crops wood forests fruit).
- 2. The world's forests are getting (bigger larger smaller better).

### Answer these questions:

- 3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
- 4. What will happen to the climate if these forests disappear?
- 6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)
- 1. do things grow What you?
- 2. a lot of Does vegetables your produce garden?
- 3. lives family Wael's a tall in building.

#### Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

- are dina and yasmin good at planting trees
- 8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

#### All Indiana in the State of contracts

parks - important - green - people - walk - sports - read - paint - kites - keep - clean



Connect 6



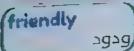
ume 2

# Leston 1 He's very clever

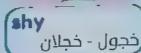
الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary













**سویsy** فوصو<u>ب</u> - غیر مُرَثُب



calm (هادم)



ر <mark>clever</mark> رماهر شاطر



nervous متوتر- قَلِق



organized رمنظه

#### Extra Vocabulary

#### كلمات إضافية

## More adjectives

مؤدب - مُهذب

polita

kind	عطوف - طیب	tidy	مرتب
nice	لطيف	intelligent	נאט
funny	مضحِك	quiet	ھادىئ
helpful	متعاون	relaxed	مسترح - هادمهٔ
careful	خَذِر - حريص	worried	فلِق - قلقان

#### Other words

a bit nervous	منوتر فليلاً (بعض الشيء)	carefully	بجرص - بِحَدَّر
Don't worry.	لا تقلق.	correctly	شکل صحیح
I'm not sure.	لستُ متأكدًا.	show respect	بظهر احتراص

52

- Sren Acel



break	استراحه فسحه	extra copy	نسخة إضاميه
textbooks	م بساعه حين	worksheets (il)	ملارم دراسـة - كراسة الندرر
Congression to the			
good at	ماهر میں - حید میں	Welcome to	مرحبًا بك فب
help with	سە بحامة	at home	مي البين
worried about	قُلق شأْن	Come on.	هيا، - ثعال،
take you arour	<b>nd</b> ينحول ېك   بأخدك فىي جولة	talk to	ْينددث مع (إلى) "شذم"
nice to others	لطيف مع الأحرين	talk about "som	بنحدث عن "شيء" "ething"

	S B cook
friendly	: nice to others, helpful
shy	: worried about talking to people, quiet
clever	: intelligent, good at school work
polite	: speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect
messy	: not tidy or organized
organized	: tidy, careful
nervous	: not calm, worried

# conjugation of the

Regular verbs äobiia dlesi i

Pins	in	F			
look	ينظر	looked	relax	ٔ پسترخ <b>ي</b>	relaxed
asĸ	يسأل	asked	paint	ِ يُلوُن 	painted

Connect 6-

	Wheel the	Tall
listen	حستمع	listened
need	بتبائ	needed
help	نساعد	helped
start	ىىدا	started
talk	التحدث	talked
offer	ر يعرض - يَقَدُم	offered
laugh	ر بضحك	laughed

1.5		Fall
guess	يُحمن	guessed
stay with	قت صونتاً '	stayed with
share ്വ	یىشارك - يشا	shared
organize	يُنظُم	organized
like	un.	liked
describ <b>e</b>	نِصِف	described
worry	يقلق	worried

#### irregular verbs

ونتظوة	ПĊ	.11	oál
-	111	U	

1

		Present	Past
	write	يكتب	wrote
	read	ىمرأ	read
	do	بفعل	did
	feel	بشعر	felt
	get	يحصل على	got
-	take	يأخذ	took
1	find		found

The second second second		THE COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE OWNER.
know	ايعرم	knew
go	لذهب	went
meet	يضابل	met
show	نظ.هِر	showed
draw	ىرسە	drew
speak	يندن	spoke
make	تمتع	made

#### Did you know?

The way you move gives other people information about your personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

إن الطريقة النب تتحرك بها تُوضَل الأذربن معلومات عن شحصيتك. كل شخص لدبه طريمة مختلفة في التحركون بطرف كما لكل منا خط يد فريد. الأشخاص الذين يتحركون بطرف متسابهة غالبًا ما بصبحون أصدقاء ويعملون معًا بشكل حبد.



# AND THE REAL PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE PA



Asser . Hi Hanger I had a foot of women in everything OK?

Hazem: H. Asser It in a st day at school and I feel a bit nervous

Asser : Don't worry, we are all friendly. I can help you get to know the school

Hazem: Really! Can you?

Asser: Sure. I can take you are just the Assert on your class room is and stay with your at broad! Lot a go most come of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basell

Basel: Hi Asser!

Asser: Hazem this is Balan. He sivery clever and he signord at math.

You can ask him if you need any help with your homework!

Basel, this is Hazem. He sistarting school here today.

Basel: Hi Hazem Melcome to our school

Asser: He's so polite!

Basel: Thanks! Do you have all your books yet. Hazem?

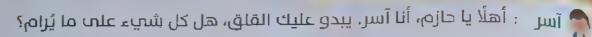
Hazem: I'm not sure. I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit messy. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have.

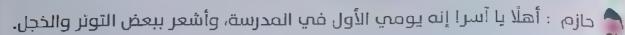
Basel: We can share my book today And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...

Hazem: Wow! You're really organized Thanks, Baself

Asser : Come on, I'l show you where the science classroom is.

#### ta gili silti yakii u





🦣 آسر : لا تقلق، نحن جميعًا ودودون. يمكنني مساعدتك على معرفة الفدرسة.

ازم : حقًا! هل يمكنك ذلك؟ 🛖

أسر ؛ بالتأكيد. يمكنني أن آخذك في جولة، وأن أُريك مكان فصلت، وأن أبقى معك في الفسحة! لنذهب ونلتقِ ببعض أصدقائي. انظر! هذا باسل. مرحبًا يا باسل!

🗥 باسل : أهلًا يا آسر.

أسر : حازه، هذا باسل. إنه ماهر جدًا، وهو جيد في الرياصيات. إذا احتجن إلى أي مساعدة في و جبك المنزلي، يمكنك أن تطلب منه! باسل، هذا حازم. وهذا أول يوم له هنا في المدرسة.

🛖 باسل ؛ أهلًا يا حازه. مرحبًا بك في مدرستنا.

آسر ؛ إنه مهذب جدًا!

السل: شكرًا! هل حصلت علم كل كتبك يا حازم؟ 👚 🚽

حازم : لستُ متأكدًا. لديّ الكثير من الكتب في غرفتي في البيت، لكنني فوضويًّا بعض الشبء. لستُ متأكدًا أيّ من الكتب المدرسية لديّ بالفعل.

باسل ؛ يمكننا النشارك في كتابي اليوم. ولدي نسخة إضافية <mark>من كراسة أ</mark> التدريبات ...

🖠 حازم : مذهل! أنت منظم للغاية. شكرًا يا باسل!

🧥 آسر 😀 هيا بنا، سأُربك مكان فصل العلوم.



# Entreite II Lesson II

1

# Read and complete the deligne with the words in the box:

break a clever nervous friendly for

Hazem: Hi, Assert It's my histotry at concerned to control

and shy.

Asser : Don't worry we are all (2)

to know the school.

Hazem: Really! Can you?

Asser: Sure I can take you around, snow you where your classrooms.

and stay with you at (3)

of my friends. Look! There's Basel Hey Basel!

Basel: Hi Asser!

Asser: Hazem, this is Basel He's your 4

good at math.

and he's

Basel: Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

## Read and match "A" with "B":



1. polite

a) worried about talking to people, quiet

2. messy

- b) tidy, careful
- 3. organized
- c) not calm, worried

4. nervous

d) speaks carefully and correctly shows respect

5. friendly

e) not tidy or organized

6. clever

f) nice to others, helpful

**7.** shy

g) intelligent, good at school work

Connect 6

# (3) Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Jana is very (helpful -nervous, -shy). She always helps people. 2. Omar is very (messy -calm - funny). He makes me laugh all the time
- 3. Salma is (u.ly -thendly -caorful). She likes talking to people. 4. John is (good -calm -bad) at art. He can draw and paint very well,
- 5. Hanl s (nervous poste mensy). He shows respect to everyone
- 6. Salah is (kind -messy -friendly). There are lots of books and clothes on his bedroom floor.
- 7. I was (nervous nice noisy) on my first day at school because I didn know anyone there.
- 8. Miss Amira is very (kind worried nervous). All the students love her
- 9. He is very (nervous -clever messy). He always gets the full mark
- 10. We all keep (calm worried noisy) in the library.
- 11. My little sister is very (intelligent -organized -shy). She's always worrige about talking to people.
- 12. My sister is always (nervous messy organized) and tidy.

# Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. Hazem How feel does today?
- 2. are very all friendly We.
- 3. I bit a nervous feel.
- 4. all Do have you books your?
- 5. share book We my today can.
- 6. are organized really You.
- 7. shows everyone He respect to.

20

8. has - Str. - black - long - hair

( )

280

d19.

h1...

Otrie

Punctue to the fermina

- 1. what dies to a second
- 2. school starts in september
- 4. dentacti . . .

1

. . . .

- 5. how does mustafa feel today
- 6

Write an email of ( ) words to your friend Aliaa:

Tell how how a little of the second of the s

Connect 6

Ahe

## We are proud of our school!

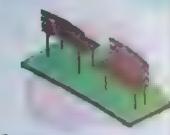
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



(Physical Education مادة الأبعاب مادة التربية البدبية



The West Court قريبة العربية العربية



benches



gymnasium طالة الألعاب الرياضية



gymnastics زیاضة الجمباز



20.00

Information Technology (۱۱) مادة تكنولوجيا المعلومات



(laboratories مختبرات - مَغامِل



do experiments بَرْجُرِي تجارِب



equipment اهذات - أدوات



math department قسم الرباضيات



tourist information website موقع معلومات سیاحیة



fantasy TV series المسل تلمريوني عن مُصة خبالية

# Extra Vocabulary

#### كلمات إضافية

# -10 H

Welcome to	ماحتِا بكم فم find out	بكتشف - يعرف
proud of	ا العَمْمُ	رد نین
popular with प्रश्ने वेपाव	in the future محبوب لدی بدظی ش	مت المستقبل
interested in	1 (atma on a planet	علم کوکن

# Other words

pharmacy	water fountain میدلیة	أ نامورة ماء
medicine	elga i open area	منظفه مفتوحة
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة playing field	ساحه اللعب
spaceship	problem فيثاثث والمثانية المثانية المث	مشكله
all age groups	<b>run</b> ؛ جميع الفئات العمرية	ريدير_

# Conjugation of The

#### Regular con-

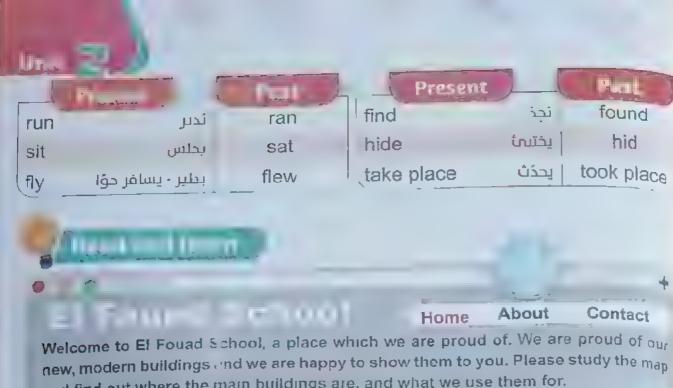
Chi	in the second	
mention	يذكر	mentioned
show	يُرِيه	showed
contact	بتواصل - ہتصل	contacted
borrow	بستعير	borrowed
call	بُسَمِّي	called
return	<u> </u>	returned

THE PARTY OF THE P	2	
happen	يحدث	happened
travel	يسافر	travelled
love	يدب	loved
live	يعيش	lived
decide	يُقَرِّر	decided
study	نِدُرُس	studied

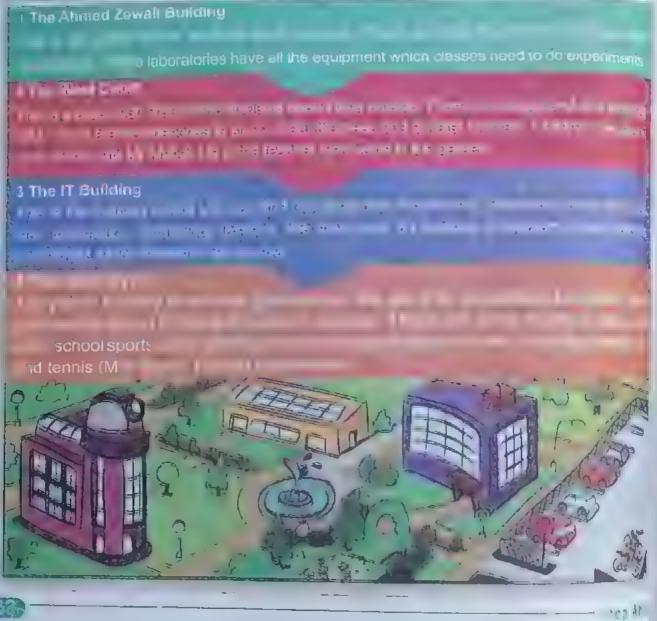
# irregular per :

		Past	The sent		
find out	يكىشف - يعرف	found out	buy	یشترب	bought
grow	ينمو - يررع	grew	tell	ٔ خبر	told (61)

Connect 6-



and find out where the main buildings are, and what we use them for.





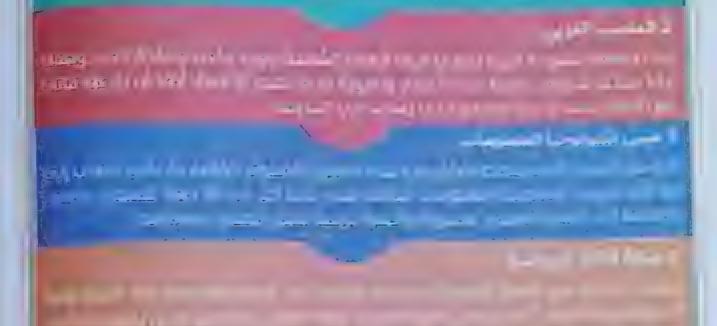
#### لصفحه الربيسية عن المدرسة الصل بنا

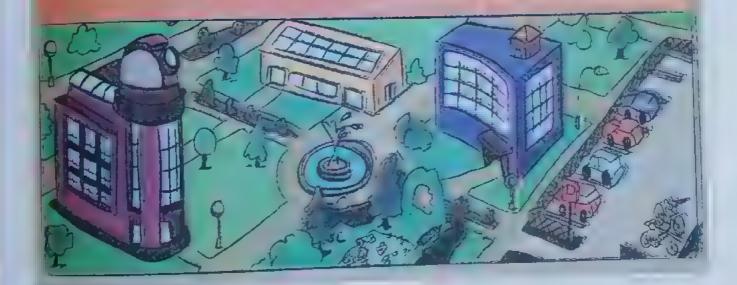
مرحباً بكم فم مدرسة الفؤاد المكان الدي نحن فخورن به. نحن فخورون بمبانينا الجديدة والحديثة، ويسعدنا أن نعرضها لكم. برجاء دراسة الخريطة ومعرفة مكان المباني الرئيسية ولأب غرص نستخدمها.

#### 1 مبنى أحمد زويل

PART TOP 180

هَذَا هو المكان الذي يحرس فيه الطلاب انعلوم. هناك أربعة فصول ومنا







# Listening Script



Wandaland is a fantasy TV series o which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes

place o in the future on a planet ocalled Wanda. This is a

world wherehumans o live because the Earth is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants

toreturn o to Earth tolook for o his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring . He doesn't

have many friends, but he thinks perhaps his family is still

alive o, so he decides to hide o on a spaceship o which is

travelling to Earth. The problem is he doesn't really know

where his parents are and he might not find them.

I'mexcited o to see what happens next!

و مسلسل تلامريوريي

و ندور أحداثه ،

الماكوكين وكيا

و الدثير

🛭 بحود ، برجع

🙃 يندث عن

nian 🕖

🔞 لا يرال علم فيد الحياة

و بحبيب

و سمیته مطاء

ال متحمس



# WINE IL

We use who, which, and where to give more information about a particular person, thing, or place. We use these words for both singular and plural nouns.

Remember when we use who, which, or where, we don't need to repeat the subject of the sentence.

who / by used to talk about people.

ندل محل فاعل أو مفعول عاقل.

OMr Sergary is the teacher. he runs the football club.

Mr Sergany is the teacher who runs the football club.

which 🖊 🕨 used to talk about things. نامحل فاعل أو مفعول غير عاقل.

These are the shoes. I wearthern to school.

These are the shoes which I wear to school.

64

Step Ahead



where

used to talk about places

تُستخدم لوصف أو نعريف مكان.

- This is the building. We do physical education in it.
  - This is the building where we do physical education.

# (ad) adjectives & (ing) adjectives)

frightened (adj) with

- We use (-ed) adjectives to describe how a person feels.
  - الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed) تُستخدم لوصف شعور شخص ما (في الغالب نسبت م لوصف عاقل).
    - ▶ I am excited!
    - ▶ She is interested in science.

frightening (adj) was a

- We use (-ing) adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.
  - الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) تُستخدم لوصف الشيء الذي جعل الشخص بشعر بشعورٍ ما (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف غير العاقل).
    - ▶ The football game is exciting.
    - ▶ This TV show is really interesting.
      - نفس الأمر ينطبق على الصفات الآتية:

	- diga		
bored	ا شاعر بالملل	boring	مُمل
frightened	خائف	frightening	مخيف
tired	مُتعَب	tiring	مُتعِب
worried	مَلِق - قلمَان	worrying	مقلق
excited	سعید - متحمس	exciting	مثير
surprised	متفاجئ	surprising	مُفاجِماً
interested	ama	interesting	ممنع شنق مُسؤق
amazed	Organia	amazıng	(مُدِهِسُ

Connect 6:-

# Exercises on Lesson

# Read and match "A" with "B":

- 1. This is the place where students
- 2. These laboratories have all the equipment which
- 3. This is a large open area where
- 4. He is the teacher who
- 5. This is the building where
- 6. We have laptops and tablets which
- 7. There are some teachers who

- a) students have break.
- b) students can borrow.
- c) study science.
- d) run after-school sports clubs here too.
- e) you can find our new computer classrooms.
- f) helps in the garden.
- g) students need to do experiment

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the be

# study - school - open area - equipment - lessons

Evan: Good Morning, Clara!

Clara: Good Morning, Evan.

Evan: Do you want to see my ① .....?

Clara: Of course, that will be so much fun.

Evan: Let me show you the classrooms and our laboratories.

in these laboratories? Clara: What do you ② ..

Evan: We study science there; we have all the 3 .. .. ....

classes need to do experiments.

Clara: Wow! That's awesome.

. where we enjoy our t Evan: We also have a large (4)

Clara: Great! Your school is amazing, Evan. I love it!



# Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

## fountain - fields - area - benches - break

This is the West Court. It is a large open ① where, students have ② . There is a playground and playing field. There are also (3) to sit on under the trees and a water (4) if you feel thirsty. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

# Choose the correct answer: who - which - where

- 1. Dalia is the girl (which who where) sits next to me in the English class.
- 2. An ostrich is a big bird (which who where) can't fly.
- 3. This is the street (which who where) my uncle lives.
- 4. I really love the red flowers (which who where) grow in our garden.
- 5. The supermarket is the place (which who where) we buy food.
- 6. Hany is a boy in my class (which who where) has a pet lizard.
- 7. These are the computers (which who where) we use for our projects.
- 8. Bees are the insects (which who where) make honey.
- 9. A pharmacy is a shop (which who where) you can buy medicine.
- 10. That is another classroom (which who where) we have science lessons.
- 11. Leila is the tall girl (which who where) has red hair.
- 12. This is a new video game (which who where) is very popular with voung children.

# Choose the correct answer: (ed) & (ing) adjectives

- 1. Hi Fareeda, I'm (surprised surprising) to see you!
- 2. The results of the students' last test are (surprised surprising).
- 3. The children feel (bored boring) when there is nothing to do.
- 4. He is (bored boring) with his work. He wants to change it.
- 5. His birthday party was (excited exciting).
- 6. They were (excited exciting) on watching the match.

67

7. I'm really (Interested - interesting) in Ancient Egypt. U.M. 8. The history of Ancient Egypt is really (interested - interesting). 9 My dad was really (tired - tiring) last night . My dad's work is very (tired - tiring) 6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 1. modern - We - are - our - proud of - buildings. 2. is - This - a large - area - open. 3. do - study - you - Arabic - Where? 4. to - surprised - see - you - I'm! 5. in - She - interested - science - is. 6. loves - using - all the - laptops - time - He. T. English - my - school - favorite - subject - is. 8. math - your - is - Who - teacher? ? 7 > Punctuate the following sentences: 1. kareem is a clever boy 2. do you like your school amgad 3. who is your math teacher - my parents take me to the park every friday 5. when does manal wake up for school ⊣ Step A 68

# **(** 3

# Roading & Prominention &

Main Vocabulary and that was a Mine I II





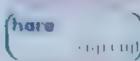






















stomach







Extra Vocabulary

كاعان طمانيين

### characters of the Story

Hara	Conditional Elephant	funt,
Monkey	المرد Mouse	الفأر

# Prepositions

Connect 6

run back home	talpatoria comi	come in	() YI
run out	الخزج راكضًا	look at	ينظر إلى
Lnu amah	يهرب	afraid of	خائف من
get to	يصل إلى	scared of	مرتعب من
go back	8 11 1 1121	ask for help	g selwa teilm



## Estimating Numbers

calculate

measure

measure

measurements

calculate

measure

measurements

calculate

measure

measurements

calculate

measure

measurements

calculate

multiply

calculate

multiply

approximate number

whole number

whole number

calculate

calculate

whole number

calculate

cal

When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers up or down to the nearest

whole number:

2.66 >-> 3.00

3.95 → 4.00

2.66 >-> 5.00

3.95 → 4.00

#### Remember



- ▶ If the digit in the tenths is 5 or more, then we'll round up to the nearest whole number:
- ﴾ ـوكان الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية (5) فما فوق، نقوم بتقريب الرفم العشري الرقم العشري الرقم العشري الرقم العشري الرقم العشري الرقم العشري الرقم المديد الأكبر.

13.95 becomes 14.

- ▶ If the digit in the tenths is less than 5, then we round down to the nearest whole number:
- ﴾ لوكن الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية أقل من (5)، نقوم بتقريب الرقم العشري إلى الرقم العشري إلى الرقم العشري إلى الرقم المحيح الأصغر.

134.3 becomes 134.

# (1,1,2,3)

# Pringreduiton

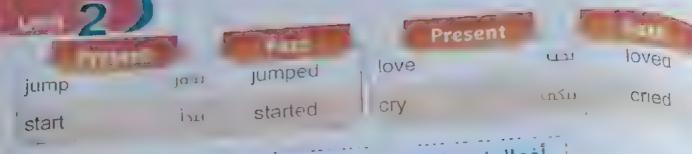
/æ/
adin
anh Ilmo
กจเถ
amai
angs and
کادل
راوك
unic
עראדוד
סאד - סואן
هارب (اسم)
و (أداة العطف)
ً أداة تنكير
أداة تنكير
سجادة - بشاط

## Carried Williams

Regular verbs	أفعال منتظمة

Pires	201	L PEN	Filsal		
remember	ا بتذكّر	remembered	laugh	يندك .	laughed
stay	يبقى - يظل	stayed	look	پنظر	looked
shout	يصيح	shouted	live	یعیش	lived
open	يفتح	opened	move	يتحرك	moved

Connect 6



		****	11 11
		غير منتظمة	افعال
Lowerstill	ar verbs	ستر سلطان	0
ITTEGUI	ui ocios		

	1.1.		Put
mak	се	ا نظيع-يجعل	made
run	back	تدرب عائدًا	ran back
con	ne in	يدخل	came in
go t		ววิชา (	went back
write down		ا يُذوَّں n	wrote down

Petra	-11	Tree 1
get to	يتيل إلى	got to
speak	CZZ	spoke
see	ا يرى	saw
tell	يُحْبر	told
think	ئمکر — — —	thought

# Read and learn



It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass.
Suddenly, her stomach makes a loud noise.
Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen.
She's hungry!

Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside Hare; house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare.

"Stay where you are!" says a loud voice.

Hare is very surprised. Who is in her house? Then
the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If
you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite
food."



Hare is very scared. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend Monkey lives.

"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare, "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"

Monkey looks interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.

They go back to Hare's house "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey

A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious."

Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!"



"Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody can eat me!"

Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.

"Stop!" says the animal inside. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."

"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest..."

Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elepnant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice!

"Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away.

Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry,"

she says. "Are you angry?"

Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "Elephant's face was so funny!" They all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.



73

إنه بـوم مسـمس، والأربــه البربــه مســلفيه علـــه العشب. وعجــأة نُضـــر بطنهــا صونــا عالنــا. تبدكــر الأربـــه البرنــة الخــــرر الموجــود فـــي مطبخهــا. إنهــا جائعـــة!

رحي الأرنبة البرتة عائدة إلى مىزلها. لكن عندما نصل إلى المرابة البرتة عائدة إلى مىزلها. لكن عندما نصل إلى الها، نتوفف. ما هذه الضوضاء؟ سببء ما يتحــرك داخــل ميرلها! نسأل الأرببة البربّة قائلة: "هل بوجد أحدٌ في الداخل؟"

يردَ صوت مرتفع من الداخل قائلًا: "ابقَيْ حيث أنتِا"

أرنية التريّة مندهشة للغاية. من الموجود في بينها؟ ثم يكلم الصوت مرة أخرى. "أيتها الأرنية البريّة، لا تدخلي. إذا حلن، سوف آكلكِ. فالأرانب البرية هب طعامي المفضل."

ِ رُسِهُ البَرِبَـةَ خَائَفَةَ جَدًا. الحيـوان الـذي في بيتهـا يريـد أن رُكِهـا. نجري الأرنبـة البريّـة إلـى الغابـة حيـث يعيـش صديقهـا الذكميّ القرد.

مول الأرنبة البريّة: "أيها القرد، ساعدني من فضلك! هناك <sub>حب</sub>وان **في منزلي، وهو يريد أن يأكلني!"** 

سدو القرد مهتمًا، ويقول: "حيوان؟ دعينا نذهب ونرى." بعودان إلى منــزل الأرنبــة البريّــة. يصيــح القــرد قائــلًا: "مــن هنــاك؟"

علم القرد والأرنبة البريّـة إلى بعضهما. كلاهما خائفان جـدًا، ويركضان إلى البحيـرة حيـث عبـش صديقهمـا الفــل. يقــولان للفيــل: "هنــاك حيــوان يــأكل الأرانـب البربــة والقــردة فــي عبـرُل الأرنــة البريّــة. نحــن نحـــاج مســاعـدنك!"

هول الفيل: "لا تقلقا! أنا قاده! أنا أصخم وأقـوم وأشجع حيـوان فـمي العالـم. لا أحـد بستطيع أ<mark>ن يأكلنـمي!"</mark>

دهب الفيل إلى منزل الأرببة البربة، ويصبح قائلًا: "سأدخل". قول الحيوان الذي بالداخل: "نومف! أنا جاثع وأنا أحب أن آكل ..."

ﻤﯩﺢ الفبل قائلًا: "لا يمكنك أن نأكليب! أنا أضخم وأقوى ..."











octo, ar mellin lluce to tempo are per ente and the contrastitute de cal be configurat الحميـع، الفبلـة بخـاف مـن الفئـران|

صرخ الفيل وهو بهرب بسرعة: "ساعدانيا فأرفا فأرفا" تنظر المَـأَرة إلـم الأرنــة البربــة والمــرد، وتمــول: "أنــا أســفة. هــل أنتميا غاضيان؟"

" " " " ( Man ) I would be a superior of the s

وجه الفيل كان مضحكًا حدًاً!"

المعادلة المرافع من ممار أن المرافق المرافلة المرفلة المرافلة المرافلة المرافلة المرافلة المرافلة المرافلة المرافلة المر

When characters speak in stories, we show it with punctuation called quotation marks:

"Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

We put quotation marks before and after the sentence.

We use verbs like say, shout, and ask to say who is speaking.

"Is somebody there?" asked Monkey.

"No, we are not angry," said Hare and Monkey.

عيدما تتحدث الشخصيات في القصص، ثبتان ذلك بعلامة ارفيام تسامي علامات التبطيص:

"Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

نطع علامة التنطيص مبل وبعد الجملة

ونستحده أفعال مثل (say - shout - ask) ليقول فن المنحدث.

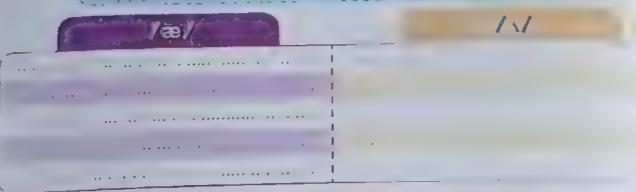
"Is somebody there?" asked Monkey.

"No, we are not angry," said Hare and Monkey.

## Exercises on Lesson

1 Read and write the following words in the correct column:

cut - track - truck - hungry - hat - funny - angry happy - ruts - bag - duck - brush - mat - animal



Round the following numbers to the nearest whole number:

1 2.03	******************************	<b>2</b> 12	2.96 -	$\rightarrow$

### Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculates how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need. Each can covers 22 square meters, so the students need 2 cans (44 square meters) to cover 42 square meters. They will have at least 20 liters left over.

## A Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Each can covers (44 42 22) square meters.
- 2. The opposite of the word "much" is (a little more many a few).



Answer these questions:	
3. How much paint does the class need to paint the 2	Samu !
	**** *****
<b>4.</b> How many liters of paint will they have left oz ாட	
Reorder the words to make correct center	(,(;5)
1. weather - The - is - today - sunny.	
2. Something - moving - the - is house - inside	
the the inside a house Mina	
3, is - the - inside - house - Who?	
u. runs - the - to - Hare - forest.	
5. my - an - There's - in - animal - house.	
The hante mice afraid are off	
6. Elephants - mice - afraid - are - of!	
7. her - hears - inside - a noise - house - Hare.	
Control ( 6 (=0) and a value also fallows	in a sierae

Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"An interesting story I read"

### I Ideas to help you

- What's this story? When did you read it?
- Who are the characters? What or who do you like best in the story?



Connect 6

### 45 Writing & Project

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary











cat

Link,

(قطة



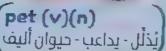
lizard

طائر

**ا** سحلیة fish

وكم







soft fur فرو ناعم



sharp claws مخالب حادة



پې (صوانات) پې



independent مستقل-معتمدعلى ذاته



well-being سعادة-سلامةنفسية



positive points نقاط إيجابية



negative point اط سلبیة

### Confugation of wares

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

	EUI )	Past
touch	يلمس	touched
need	يحتاج	needed
walk	تصسمنا	walked

	क्राता।	,
include	يشمل - يتضمن	included
use	يستخدم	used
like	بعب	liked

78

Step Ah



#### lats Are the Best Pets



Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.



الفطط هم حيوانم المفصل، وأعنقد أنها أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة. إنها حميلة ولها مرو ناعم لصبف الملمس. إنها حيوانات نظيفة وهادئة، وعادةً ما تكون ودودة. وهي ترب البشر ولكنها حيوانات مستقلة، لذلك لا يلزم أخذها في نزهة توميًا. صحيح أن القطط لديها محالب وأسنان حادة، لكنها لا تستخدمها إلا عندما تكون خائمة. يقول الناس أيضًا أنه عندما تداعب قطة، فهذا يجعلك سعيدًا. لذا فالقطط مفيدة لراحتك النفسية أبضًا.



■ You can use "but" to join two contrasting ideas in a sentence.

For example, you can mention a negative point, then use but to explain why it's not really a problem.

■ يمكنك استخدام "لكن" للربط بين فكرتين متناقضتين في جملة. على سبيل المثال، يمكنك ذكر نقطة سلبية، ثم استخدام "لكن" لشرح سبب عدم كونها مشكلة.

but / D D D D D D

تُستخدم لربط جملتين يعبران عن التناقض.

O It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

Connect 6+



Read and complete the text with the words in the box,

#### soft walk - friendly - ont . pets

e ats an marting the same and the large of the hough the

The, are to for all 2

They are an in the rest to and so trainly 3

The place product to the protection of the year of the detailed to the company of the second of of th

### (2) Choose the correct answer:

- 1. cats are 12. Teconite and a shall littlink they are the best (pets income a love)
- 2. Cats have soft sharp hard) for which is nice to touch
- 3. Cats are the sympother of the symposistic states are the symposistic sta
- 4. Cats have (dal snarp blunt) claws and teeth. Don't make then in
- 5. People say that when you (pet eat kick) a cat, this makes you also cat happy.

### 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. are favorite my animals Cats.
- 2. are pets Fish best the.
- 3. fur Soft is to nice touch.
- 4. keep pet love to clean my.
- 5. claws have Cats sharp and teeth.
- 6. favorite writes Hany about pet his.

7. Dogs - pets - are - friendly - very.

Þ

8, love to - do - people - pets - keep - Why?

b

9. want - the - to - We - beach - go to

P

10. polite - is - and - Dalia - clever.

Þ

### Punctuate the following sentences:

1. this is arwa's lovely pet

Þ

2 no we don't need to go to the school on saturday

Þ

3. mohamed salah is a famous footballer

4. what s your favorite animal

▶

5. those aren t my shoes

(5

### Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"My favorite pet"

#### dees to help your

- What is it?

- What does it eat?
- Where does it sleep?
- How do you pet it?
- What are the positive and negative points of having a pet?





Connect 6 ⊢

## Test-3 on Unit 2

### خاص بالأرهر السريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

\* ,

(3M<sub>2</sub>)

coastly to go stamillion

- 1. The west court is the large open area (who which where students spend time outside.
- 2. There are also (chairs seats benches desks) to sit on under the tree.
- 3. Children can also grow (trees flowers seeds plants) with Mr Mahrli
- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:[3Maj

#### afraid - brave - interested - interesting

Radwa: Did you like the story of Hare?

Amany: Yes. I think it's

Radwa: Why was Hare 2 .....?

Amany: Because there was an animal in her kitchen, and it wanted to

eat her.

Radwa: Which character did you like best?

Amany: I liked Elephant. He's 3

, but he's very

funny. He made me laugh.

### 3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms

- 1. The fridge is a place (which where who when) we keep our foods and drinks.
- Dad bought me a new mobile. This was (surprised surprising surprising bored).
- 3. Hagar is a girl in my class (which where who when) is polite and clever.
- 4. He wants to go out with his friends, (and so because but) he has a lot of homework.

82

- Step Aher

## Read the text and answer the questions:

Hello! My name is Amr. Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which in nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The opposite of the word 'sharp' is (soft hard ugly).
- 2. Cats are beautiful with soft ( yes teach fur)

### Answer these questions:

- 3. Why does Amr like cats?
- 4. When do cats use their sharp claws and teeth?

Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

- 1. Hazem How feel does today?
- 2. like you do school Which subjects?
- 3. new My school great is.
- Punctuate the following sentence:
  - yes we are going to the zoo on thursday
- Write an email of (50) words to your friend Yousef: (5Ms)

"My school"

like - meet - friends - big - classrooms - laboratories gymnasium - open area - playing fields



Connect 6.

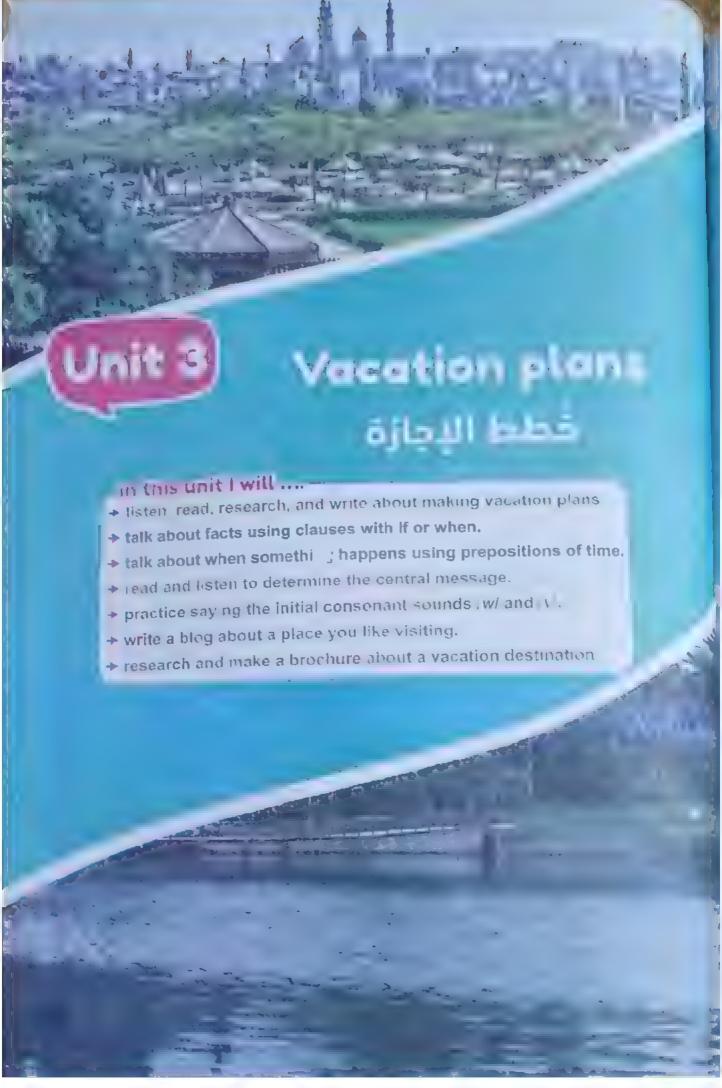
(1Ms)

#### Test 4 on Unit 2 نصا الاستماع موحودان أخر الكتاب. Listen and choose the correct answer: (3M8) 1. The IT Building is the building where you can find our (1 / - rang. computer - mobile) classrooms. 2. Students come here for their information (Science - English - Meth. Technology) lessons. 3. We have over (40 - 50 - 60 - 70) computers. Listen and complete the sentences: (3M8) 1. The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study 2. There are four classrooms and two new ...... 3. There's all the equipment which classes need to do Choose the correct answer: (4Ms 1. This is the boy (which - who - where) becomes my new neighbor. 2. The park is a place (which - who - where) he flies his kite. 3. They are (interesting - surprised - interested) in doing experiments. 4. These are the vegetables (where - which - who) my mom bought today. Read and match "A" with "B": (5Ms) B 1. What is the weather like in July? a) A small mouse. 2. My dad likes his work, **b)** 4. 3. We can round the number 4.32 to c) all the equipment. d) 5. 4. Who is in Hare's house? e) but it's very tiring. 5. These laboratories have f) It's very hot. Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms

Some people like to keep pets at their homes. If you are one of those, you should choose one that is right for your family and your home. If you live in a house with a garden, then a dog would be a good pet for you. Dogs need,

the garden for exercise. Dogs are very good guards. The dog is well known Cats live happily in flats. An aquar'um full of fightir fur to watch There are many different types of fish that live happily together. Remember that they need plants to make oxygen, and the aquanting always needs to be clean. Whatever pet you choose, you should love and care for it. You have to feed it. Your pet will love you in return. Choose the correct answer: 1. (Two - Three - Four - Five) types of pets are mentioned in the passage. 2. The underlined word 'well known' means (angry - naughty - famous -Answer these questions: 3. What does the underlined word "they" refer to? 4. What should you do for your pet? Reorder the v.ords to make correct sentences: (4Ms) 1. shoes - These - the - are - I - wear - which - to school 2. does - Amr - What - like? 3, Mr Mahdı - witn - Children - grow - can - plants. Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)wnat s the weather like in egypt in january Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hagar: (5Ms) Tell her about your schoo rooms, and what you do in every room. Tell her also about the school open areas and playgrounds, and where you spend your break, and what you do then. Your email address is sarah@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is hagar@gmail.com. ... From To Subject :

Connect 6



### Lesson



## 1 Let's go quad biking on Tuesday

Main Vocabulary الأساسية في الدرس





vacation إبازه - عطلة



quad biking قيدلي دراجات رياعية (ذات أربعة إطارات)



hotel \_\_\_\_\_



take photos

jgn häili



#### Places

Cairo

Giza

القاهرة Manial Palace Museum

مئدنة بات روينة Bab Zuweila minaret الجبرة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

view	مَنْظُر - مشهد - إطلالة	sunset	عروب الشمس
top	<u>قِمة</u>	the theme park	مدينه الملاهب
look interesting	يبدو ممتغا	Cool!	العا

Connect 6

Prepositions			
excited about	متحمس لے متحمس بشأن	on Sunday	مى توف الإحد
come back	بعود - پرجع	on Wednesday	برن يوم الأربعاء فين يوم الأربعاء
in about 30 min	مىي غصون 30 دقىقة <b>utes</b>	in the morning	الصباح الصباح

### Did you know?

عل إعلم ٢

When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between desert cliffs, it is narrow.

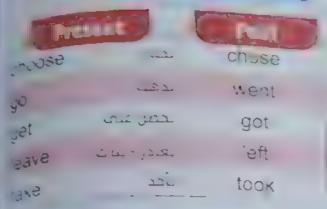


### Conjugation of verbs

### أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

Present		Past	Pre	sent	Pasi
visit	يزور	visited	want	يُريد	wanted
watch	يشاهد	watched	plan	يُذَطِّط	planned
look	يبدو - انظر	looked	love	بحب	loved
ask	يسأل - يطلب	asked	arrive	يصل	arrived
climb	يتسـق	climbed	explore	يستكشف	explored

### Irregular verbs



#### أفعال غبر منتظمة

Truck		
rae	٠, ک	rode
eat	j.	ate
do	ىيعل	did
come	214	came
say	lge.	said

#### Read and learn

#### ing vacation

Samer: I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.

Basel: Me too! Why don't we try new places? We can travel to Cairo.
There are lots to see there.

Samer: Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

Basel: Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums.

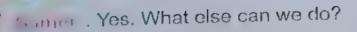
Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

Samer: Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

Basel: Like what?

Samer: We can go quad brking in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

Basel: Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening.



Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

They're near the Minaret.

Rasel: Great! Cairo here we come!



سامر : أنا متحمس لعُطْلَتِنا هذا الأسبوع يا باسل.

إِ بِرَسِل ؛ وأَنَا أَيضًا! لَمَ لَا نُجِرِّبِ زِيارِهُ أَمَاكِنَ بِـدِيدَةٍ؟ يَمْكِنَا الْخُهَابِ إِلَى القَاهِرَةُ، فَهَنَاكُ الْعَدَيْدِ مِنَ الأَشْيَاءِ الْذَهَابِ إِلَى القَاهِرَةُ، فَهَنَاكُ الْعَدَيْدِ مِنَ الأَشْيَاءِ النَّبِي يَمْكِنَ رَقِيتُهَا هِنَاكُ.

يمر - نعم. يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولًا. إذا ذهبنا إلى المتحف يوم الأحد، يمكننا التقاط صور يوم الاثنين من أجل مشروعي المدرسي.

باسل : حسنًا، هذا رائع! يمكن لأمي أن تذهب معنا، فهب تحب المتاحف، دعنا نذهب أيضًا إلى مدينة الملاهي ونركب قطار الملاهي!

منا! لنفعل ذلك بوم الثلاثاء. هناك أيضًا بعض الأماكن التي تبدو مُشوِّقة خارج القاهرة.

السل ؛ مثل ماذا؟ المنادا؟

سسر . يمكننا أن نذهب لركوب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء في الجبزة. إذا استقللنا الحافلة سنّصِلُ في حوالي 30 دقيقة. والجا بمدينا الصلب باخرا يوم الأربعاء والعودة للمُندق قبل المساء.

اسامر . أجل، ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل غير ذلك؟

من الأعلم حصل العلية إذا دهما إلى هناك آذر النهار، بمكننا مشاهده من الأعلم حصل العلية إذا دهما إلى هناك آذر النهار، بمكننا مشاهده

غروب الشمس على المدينة.

و و الأفا ومن الصاح بمكتنا استخشاف الأسواق! إنها قريبة من المتحية

السل ؛ عظيما ها نحن قادمون أينها الفاهرةا



#### We can make suggestions by using:

#### 💻 یمکن اقتراح شیء ما بعدة طُرق منها:

هبا بنا المصدر +

لما لا المصدر +

هل ينبغي علينا أن / هل يجب أن المصدر +

O Let's go to the theme park.

Why don't we try new places?

O Should we explore the souks?

### 💻 عند الموافقة على الاقتراح يمكن استخدام تعبيرات مختلفة مثل:

Okay, cool! حسنًا، رائع! Great! واثعا Okay. حسنًا، رائع! Good idea!

Connect 6+

## Exercises on Lesson

- Read and match " " with " "
- 1. Let's go to the theme park
  - Your arry of si
- 3. How long does it take?

There are also some places outside Cairo

5. Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret.

- a) About 30 minutes.
- b) ( + if, 1,0 = 1
- c) The view from the top is because
- d) What iso do jou Hamit?
- e) biking in the desert!
- f) that look interesting
- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box

## ride - Museum - biking - places - photos

: I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel. Samer

: Me too! Why don't we try new 1 Basel

travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

: Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Samer

: Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museum: Basel

Let's also go to the theme park and 3 Cha

rollercoaster!

: Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places Samer

outside Cairo that look interesting.

: Like what? Basel

: We can go quad (2) Samer

in the desert in Giza.

we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

: Great! We can go early and come back to the hote! before Basel

evening.

? Me sar

1,59



## Choose the correct answer:

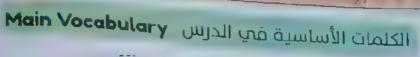
- 1. Let's (visited visits visit) the Man al Palace Maselini
- 2 We can (explore take choose) the Souks.
- 3 Why don't we (try tries tried) new places?
- g, you can go (swimming diving quad biking) in the tesent
- 5. Let's go there and (ride drive climb) on a rollercoaster.
- 6 In the late afternoon we can watch the (sunset sunrise moon light) over the city
- 7. Let's (arrive walk climb) the Bah Zuweila minaret
- 8. I choose what to do (at in on) Thursday.

## Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. excited vacation I'm about our.
- 2. places new don't try Why we?
  - ?
- 3. Manial Palace We the can visit Museum.
- 4. beautiful The is from view the top.
- 5. can We in the desert quad biking go.
- 6. in We about 30 minutes will arrive.

Andrew will be the second of t
5 Punctuate the following sentences:
1. should we explore the souks on monday
2. are there interesting places in cairo
3. let s go to sharm el-sheikh on monday
4. do you enjoy your vacation
5. no i can t go to giza by bike
6. why don't we visit the egyptian museum on thursday
Write an email of (50) words to your friend Mustafa:
Tell him about your vacation, the new places you visit, and how you en your time. Your email address is amir@gmail.com. And your friend's en your time.
your time. Your email address is at most address is mustafa@school.net.
address is mistaratosories
The same of the sa
To :
Subject :
**************************************
***************************************
***************************************
Step Ahle

### 2) If we book the tour today, W's com 10101













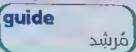






جولة (سياحية)







#### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

less time	وقت أقل	credit card	بطاقة ائتمان
more time	وقت أطول	study time	ومّت المذاكرة
problem	مشكلة	row	رفع
dictionary	قاموس	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر
properly دی - بشکل مناسب	بصورة صحيحة - كما ينبغ	social media	وسائل النواصل الاجتماعي
cheaper	أرخص	dust	البخ
tips	نصائح	stomach ache	مغص (ألم بالمعدة)

#### I-coost Lons

pay for	يدفع مقابل	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
listen to	يستمع إلى	at the end	في النهاية

Connect 6-

راطبال الهجار (الطبار) عن (المجار) عن (المجار) عن المجارك المجارك المجارك المجارك المجارك المجارك المجارك الم

turn it down

## Laufahanpin al map

### Regular verbs

- Lagar

#### أفعال منتظمه

Till.	
book	Jaal
switch on	பில்யி
switch off	(nabi
turn on	انسندل
water 💴	് - സ്മസ്വ
press	भिक्ष
heat	أبسكن
melt	يَدِيب

switched on switched off turned on watered pressed heated lasted finished remembered

illus. PARSENT check off the state on the checked of blocked mir Siai block happened يحدث happen preferred أمضل - تحند prefer planned نخطط plan traveled ىسافر travel studied يداكر study يُذِرُب tried try died يموت die celebrated celebrate يحتفل concentrated concentrate بُزکْز

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

			7012
	cost	نكلف	cost
	mean	تعبن - تومد	meant
	pay	يدفع	paid
	sit	يجلس	sat
	choose	يختار	chose
	find	757	found
	get better	يتحشن	got better
(	tell	يُخْبِر	told

يستمر

mali

ىندڭر

Pro:	ent	I Bank
catch	ئفسك	caught
eat	يأكل	ate
meet	يضابل	met
get up	یلهض <b>- یستیقظ</b>	got up
know	بعرف	knew
write	بيكيب	wrote
give	تعطش	gave
feel	بشعر	felt

96

last

finish

remember

- Step Aher

المصدر + (can) + مضارع بسيط 

When المصدر + (can) + + (c

- We use clauses with "if" or "when" + present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can", to talk about facts or things that are usually true.
- الصفرية أو (When) للتعبير عن حقائق أو أشياء تكون صحيحةً ع<sub>ادةً</sub> الستخدم حالة (lf) الصفرية أو When) للتعبير عن حقائق أو أشياء تكون صحيحةً
  - O If we go by bus, it is quicker.
  - O Wnen you go there in the afternoon, you can watch the sunset.
- The clause with (if/when) can come at the start of the sentence, or at the end. When it comes first, we separate the two clauses with a comma.
- يمكن أن نستخدم (lf) أو (When) في بداية الجملة أو بين العبارتين، ولكن عندما نبدأ الجملة بد (lf) أو (When) نضع فاصلة (,) بين العبارتين.
  - O If you press the button, the tablet switches off.
  - O The tablet switches off if you press this button.
- In questions, the clause with if/when usually comes at the end.
  - عند صياغة سؤال، عادةً ما تُستخدم (۱f) أو (When) بين العبارتين.
  - O How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?
  - O Does your aunt always cook feteer when you visit her?

Connect 6 -

#### Prepositions of Line

		Prepositions of the	
	in	on	at
	in	- Friday (days)	at six o'clock (hours
	in the morning	on Friday (days)	
	in the afternoon	on Saturday	at nine thirty
	in the alternoon		at half past two
	in the evening	on Sunday	arrian pass mo
	in October (months)	on school days	at eleven twenty
	IU Octobel Lineaus est		at night
1	in September	on the weekend	at night
- 1		on my birthday	at midnight
- 1	in summer (seasons)	off filly birthday	
1	in winter	on April 17th (dates)	at midday
1			at lunchtime
	n 2019 (years)	on the 17th of April	ariunonune

نستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الشهور، ولكن إن قصدنا يومًا محددًا في الشهر نستخدم حرف الجر (on).



### Smilg Oper

Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's brains work better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you are hungry! If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can work better in the afternoon. It's helpfu if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

يكر لمدة 30 دقيقة ليس أكثر. إذا حاولت الدراسة لساعات بدون استراحة، فلا بمكنك غرير. عندما تأخذ فترات راحة منتظمة، فإنك تتذكر أكثر. من الأفضل أيضًا أن نذاكر في على الوقت كل يـوم، حتى في أيـام الجمعة والسبن. تعمل عقـول الناس بشكل أفضل يكن لا يهم روتين منتظم. أيضًا، لا تذاكر عندما تكون جائعًا! إذا قمت بتناول وجبة صحية عبى وقن الغداء يمكنك أن تعمل بشكل أفضل في وقت الظهيرة. من المفيد أن تقوم خويل قائمة عما تريد القيام به في كل مرة تذاكر فيها. تم يمكنك حذفه من الفائمة غداء منه وتشعر بالفخر!



: Dad, here's the information 0 I found online 0 about quad biking in the desert.

فعلومات 🖰 عبر الإمريي

: Oh, thanks Samer. Show me. Dad

😉 فغامرات محراوية (اسي شركة) –

: The company is called Desert Adventures 9. Samer

tamil O

When you look at their website, the information is here. Look. The tour guide will meet us at the hotel.

: OK. What time will he meet us? Dad

samer: He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

: And what time do we get back? Dad

Samer : We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included in the

price O. Should we take some water?

: Yes. Good idea. How big is the group? Dad

samer: It'll be a group of six.

: I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets o. That's Dad good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike @.

How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

samer: One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an

hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

: Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Dad

🗗 خُودات ؛ خُود

Remember to listen to the guide's instructions

🙃 دراجة رباعية

o so that you stay safe 9.

🧿 إرشادات المرشد

Samer : Yes, I will Dad.

🔞 ئىقى آمنًا

: Good! How do we book the tour o if we can't Dad

🥹 الجولة - الرحلة

book it on the website?

🛈 مكتب الشركة

Samer: We can book it at the office @ in town. If we book the tour

today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount.

: Great. Can you pass me my wallet? I need my credit card Dad

to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now.

Samer: Sure Dad. Here you are.

Connect 6+

## Listening Script



Hana

: Hi, My name's Hana Tget up every day at 6 o'clock Thay breakfast with my family at 6.30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday, I do homework on Tuesday

Toussef: Hi. I'm Youssef I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7.30 in the morning i don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday I do homework on Thursday.

Maggie: Hello. My name's Maggie. I get up every day at 6.30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports. I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.

Nader

: Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8.15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

### Lesson Exercises

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

## finish - have - concentrate - try - work

Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. If you ① ......to study for hours and hours, you can't concentrate. When you 2 ..... regular breaks, you 3 ..... more. It's also better to study at the same time each day. People's brains 4 ..... better if they have a regular routine.

- Step Ahe

## Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

## check - eat - finish write - remember

pon't study when you're hongr, ' if y ', (1) a healthy meal at junchtime, you can ② ..... better in the afternoon. It's helpful if ου 3 . down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can (4) it off the list when you (5) studying and feel proud!

Read and complete the minisdralogues with the words in the box:

## pencils - door - dictionary - activities - social media

1. Hazem: Mom, there's a problem with the freezer. It isn't working

: The freezer doesn't work if you don't close the Mom properly.

: Mrs. Manal, can we use in the test? 2. Leila

Teacher: No, sorry, you can't. Tell me now if you don't have a blue pen.

3. Karim: What does this word mean, Sherif?

Sherif: I don't know. Look it up in a . . . . if you don't know it.

4. Selim: What happens if you block a person on

Dalia : You don't get any messages from them.

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. (Who When How) you study hard, you get good marks.
- 2. You feel thirsty (if so but) you don't drink water.
- 3. When you book online, you can (choose chooses chose) which

Connect 6 ™

- Jakana C 4. If you press the button, the tablet (switches - switch - switched) off

  - 5. If we go by bus, it (am is are) quicker. 6. How can we get to Giza if we (missing - misses - miss) the bus?
  - 7. Does your aunt always (cooks cooked cook) feteer when you visit hen

  - 8. If you (heat heats heated) sugar, it melts. 9. If you find my keys, please (called - call - calls) this number.
  - 10. It means there's dust in the sky when the clouds (is am are) req.

  - 11. My English always gets better when I (studied study studies) the lessons again at home.
  - 12. You feel hungry (what when where) you don't eat.
  - 13. She (could come can come came) with us if she has free time.
  - 14. If you buy two T-shirts, you (get gets got) one free.
  - 15. If you (doesn't water don't water water) plants, they die.
  - 16. If you press this button, the red light (turns on turn on turned on),

  - 17. If I (eats eat ate) too much cake, I get a stomach ache.
- 18. If the TV (work don't work doesn't work), don't use the remote control
- 19. If he doesn't have enough money, he (can buy couldn't buy can't buy) that expensive bike.
- 20. My cat (tries try- tried) to catch a bee when she sees it.

## 5 Choose the correct answer:

**Prepositio** 

- 1. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim (in on at) the spring.
- 2. Let's meet outside the school (in on at) 10:30 am.
- 3. We had a science class (in on at) Monday.
- 4. They went on a trip to the Red Sea (in on at) July.
- 5. Great news! I'm having a party (in on at) my birthday!
- 6. What did you do (in on of) the weekend?



- 7. When do you get up (in on at) school days?
- 8. 1 get up (in on at) 7 o'c ock,
- 9. We walk back home from school (in on at) the afternoon.
- 10. They came to live here (in on at) 2021.

## 6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. but Study about no longer for 30 minutes.
- 2. the city can We fun have in.
- 3. My tickets books the online dad.
- 4. on this product had discount a great We.
- 5. do How you study time during concentrate?
- 6. the city we Can go to bus by?

### Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1. mom there s a problem with the freezer
- 2. mrs manal lets us use pencils in the test
- 3. we had a math class on sunday
- 4. he went on a trip to hurghada in october
- 5. which city do you like to live in giza or alexandria

Connect 6

?

Units 3

Lesson 3, Fatima face for four & Story Main Vocabulary ساكات الأساسية مناه الدرس الكلمان الأساسية مناه المناسلية ا

Part 1 Talling four her fee









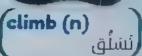
famous places أماكن شهيرة

monument أثر تارىدى فغلم أثرى

great view منظر رائع إملاك رائعن

secret







face (v) ريُواجِه



disappoint إيدبط



141

fear (n) (v)



teenage girl رضاة في سن مراهفة



dome قُلْق



hill رنال

Part 2

The Story

Characters of the story معملا المحصيلات

Little Deer

Wolf أ لغزال الصغير

L'1

Little Bird

الطائر الصغير Bear

Fox

الثعلب

الذب

104

Step Ahea



	our ataly	વાલામી	ilak j
A/Si			
scared	Hario	excited	متحمس
calmar	ا أكثر هدوغا	clear	نقمي
fantastic	و دانع	cool	بارد
typical day	، يوم اعتيادی	famous	مشهور
incredible	لا يُصدُق - رالع	tall buildings	أبنبة عالية
Preposition			
afraid of heights	والعميها إيم يدعو	run on	يواطل الركض (الدوت)
look after	1 Args1	climb up	ينسلق
look at	נולן ווח	come back	يعود - يرجع
Connect &			

## Compagnition of Usper

### Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

		en)
disappoint J		disappointed
fear	يخاف	feared
shout	انطاح	shouted
look after	العيرت ا	looked after
climb	يتسلق	climbed
   walk	لسسما	walked
lift	يرفع	lifted
happen	يَدُنْ	happened

C From	الد	Ra
watch	يشاهد	Watched
help	عداسي	helped
stop	يتوقف - يوقف	stopped
sparkle	يتلألاً - يلمع	sparkled
face	پواجه	face <sub>d</sub>
decide	ؠؙڞؙڒڔ	decided
breathe	بتنفس	breathed
smile	رصىبنى	smiled

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

Frach		Past
eat	يأكل	ate
drink	لشرب	drank
say	يقول	said
see	முபூ	saw
come	يأتي	came
catch	يمسك	caught
know	اتعارم	knew
make	تمبع	made
think	يفكر	thought

Fresen		1(35)
run	יכניה	ran
go	ńwyi	Went
sing	يغني	sang
give	شهعنا	gave
hear	يسمع	heard
find	يجد	found
feel	ىشعر	feit
tell	يخبر	told
understand	يفهم	understoo

# eld internet the



### (m) = (m)

16	***		(v) = /v/
wolf	ر زبر ۲ ا	violin	ألة كمان (آلة موسيقية)
water	إماء	Volcene	برکان
window	ا نافذة - سبت	Vegetables	
wet	مُبْتَل - مُبلُّل	vet	خضراوات
whale	حوت	veil	طنتن نتطرث
west	اتجاه الغرب	veit	طرحة - وشاح - حجاب
	t miles	vest	سُتُرة - صديري
walk	تمشمر	van	سيارة كبيرة - شاحنة
web	شبكة العنكبوت	visit (v)	يرور
worm	دودي	vase	مزهرية - فازة
white	أبيض	very	جذا
wear	تايدي	village	
Wo T.		ricage	غريهٔ

## Read and sem





Fauma's favorite cousin Amal comes to Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we all the famous places.

تُرِي أَمِلَ لَفَاطِمِهَ صَوْرَةَ. "هِلَ يَمَكُنْنَا الْذَهِ إِنَّاتِي أَمِلَ ابْنَةَ عَمَ فَاطْمِهَ الْمَفْضَلَةُ لَرِيارِ عَنَ الشهيرة.



visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We She's very excited. She wants to see can climb up the hill to it - there's a great view from there!"

لزيَّــارة قَبـة أبـو الهــوّاً؟ يمكنناً صعـود التلُّ إنها المرة الأولى التي تزور فيهاأمل أُسه للوصول إليها - هناك إطلالة رائعة من هناك!"||إنها متحمسة جدًا، وتريد أن تـرم كل المكر



Fatima doesn't know what to say She wants to make Amai happy but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?

لا تعرف فاطمه ماذا تمول. إنها تريد أن يدعل أميل سعيده، لكيل لدنها شير: إنها تدشمت المرتفع أن، كيـف يمكنها ضع ود النيل إليان الميـف؟



Fatima doesn't want to disappoint he cousin, so she decides to face her fear that's a good idea," she says, Ler. go on Tuesday in the afternoon, We can watch the sunset."

عاممه أن تحلب أمل الله عمها، لدلا) موجم ه خومساً. تفول: 'هذه مكره بن لاها بوم اللاحاء بعد الظهر، بمكننا بناهاه عرود الشمس".



It's Tuesday and the girls are at Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

إنه يوم الثلاثاء، والفتيات عند قبة أبو الهوا، وبعد صعود طويل يصلون إلى القمة. وجه فاطمة شاحب. إنها خائفة جدًا، لكن أمل تمسك بيدها وتبتسم، ثم تقول: "تنفسي ببطء، يمكنك فعل هذا يا فاطمة. الآن انظري حولكِ".



Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her hear to look at the view. It is incredible Suddenly she doesn't feel scare anymore. She feels proud to live such a fantastic place!

ينعر فاطمة أنها أكثر هدوءًا. وترفع رأسها ا نظر إلى المنظر. إنه مذهل ، فجأة لم تعد نعر الحوما، إنها تسعر بالفخار للعياش عمكان بهذه الروعة!



pictures can help you understand what a story is about and give you action happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they

سكر، الصور أن بساعات عمر مسمع ما تدور حوله القصة وتعطيك تفاصيل على المدرد الصور أن بساعات من مسمع ما تدور حوله القصة وتعطيك تفاصيل على المدرد الصور أن بساعات أن بوضي الأحمال يمكن الساعية أن بوضي الأحمال المدال يمكن الساعية أن بوضي هذه اللحظة.

#### in the forest

beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake.

Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"



Lite Deer runs on through the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

Oh no!" says Little Doer, "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"

sparkles in the sun. "Finally!" he says "I can have a... Oh no!" To Deer sees so, "I can't drink from the same stream as To a wants to eat me!"

Dive Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle. It isn't bill like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle ke the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

sneisn't afraid. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle

L'e Deer watches Little Bird. Hmm," he thinks. "if Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too!"

Connect 6 --

Little Deer goes back to the beautiful, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious Little Deer feels happy and proud.

ورال الصفير الرحق عبر العانف وتعد ذلك يصل إلما يمر بالهربان فط و درن عدد الرحق عبر العانف و درن عدد المورد المورد و المورد المو

هن العلل المعال "بُوه الآلا استطع أن أسرت من تمس النهر الدين بسبب و تما دن صعب المراري المراري عام عام المراري عام عام المراري عام المرار

وافي العال صحير الركض عبر العابر وبطل إلم حذول مانماً مع صبيلا ماء الدجرال مين علي عول العزال الصعير «أصرا! يمكس الصول علم أوملاك برم العرال الدهريا الصلام علي أوملاك من العرال الدهريا الصلام

وعلى الحارب المتعار الرخص عبر الغاية. وبصل إلى جدُول فائي صعير المالاً ماء الحدول مم مصل العرال العصير "أحيراً! بمكتبين الخصول على . أوه الأثمرين العرال الصعير الاحت وأسط على العرب من عسن الحدول الحرب بشرت منه التعليد. فاعطت بريد أن تأديبين

چس الحرال الصعدر الرخص عبر انعانه. لمد وبيل إلى يزكه ماء صبره. إنها انسب رزياء وعدرد والمدن باردة وبناهم كالنهر، ولا سأنا كالحدول المانيي. لص العرال الصعار منعر وعلم المدند الحرا

يبتدا الب الجول الطعير الطائر التبعير. وتري الطائر التبعير الجول الصغير التنفي عدد عادل التبعير المارين التنفير المارين المار

عل التجرب بين الطاغ الصعير ويقد "همة م، إذ كان بإنكان الطاغ الصعير أن كون حدا سه دست أن اكون سد، أن أيضا

بعود الغزال لصحير الما للصوري ويضرب إلى الماء بصرا يماع ، لعرال الصحير الما السعادة والمرار ، بمانا مرار ويضرب الماء بديرا والماء بديرا الماء بديرا والماء بديرا الماء بديرا والماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا والماء بديرا الماء بديرا والماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا والماء بديرا الماء بديرا والماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا والماء بديرا الماء الماء بديرا الماء بديرا الماء بديرا

110

Deal

Step Ahre

## Exercises on Lesson

(A)	Read	and	match	"A"	With	" P.".
		000				-

1. Little Deer runs through

2. It is Amai's first time in Aswan.

3. Where did it have a drink?

Il She lifts her head

5. The water of the river

----

- a) At the lake.
- b) to look at the view.
- c) She's very excited.
- d) was cool and clear.
- e) the forest.
- f) feels happy and proud.

## Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

### cousin - scared - famous - Dome - Aswan

Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's

first time in 

She's very excited. She wants to see

places. Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can

we go visit the 

of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up to

the top – there's a great view from there!"

### Write the following words in the correct column:

water - wolf - volcano - window - violin vegetables - vet - west - veil - worm

/w/

Connect 6

THE REAL PROPERTY.

4

Read the following text and answer the questions below:

It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you." Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. She can see all of the city below her. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared anymore. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The underlined word 'scared' means (brave afraid excisq).
- 2. Fatima feels proud to live in such a (horrible fantast c boring)
  place!

### Answer these questions:

- 3. What do the girls do at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?
  - •
- 4. Who helped Fatima to feel calmer? And how?

### (5)

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. all the want to I famous see places.
  - Þ
- 2. a shows Amal photo Fatima.
- 3. forest the through Deer L tt e runs.
  - **>**
- 4. from There's view there a great!

5. doesn't - He - know - to - what - say.

Lesson 3

6. She - make - happy - everyone - to - wants.

7. want - I - you - disappoint - don't - to.

g, the - river - a drink - Bear - from - has.

### Punctuate the following sentences:

4, fatima's favorite cousin amal comes to visit her

2 what s the weather like on sunday

3. how much does it cost

4, i don t like reading

5. yes give me some water please

6. he s a clever boy

7. no she isn t good at painting

. . . . .

8, it is amal's first time in aswan

Connect 6 -

(113)

### Le Bont 4 5 Writing & Project

### All the Jun of the Commutate

الكلمات الأساسية متي الدرس Main Vocabulary



world of fantasy عالم خیالی



simulation theater مسرح المحاكاة

**Orient Train** 

**Waterfalls** 

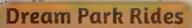


fun مىعة - مرح



shows





rollercoaster لعبة قطار الشرق

إلعية الشلالات



stores

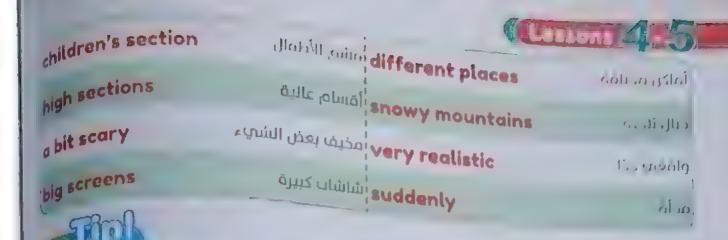


مناحر

#### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

blog post	منشور في مدونة	tickets	نداكر
date	تاریخ	seat	730,5
title	عنوان	under the ocean	الله محيط
carnival	مدتىو مررهن	brave	يداع:
birthday surprise	مفاجأة عيد ميلاد	sound and light effects وضوئية	غِبْرات صوتــة



A blog post should have a title and date, and use informal language and first person pronouns (I, my, me). It has to include a personal story, and it usually gives the writer's opinions and feelings about their experiences. Bloggers often add photos to make their blogs more attractive.

يجب أن يكون لمنشور المدونة عنوان وتاريخ، وأن نستدده، فنده لعده غير رسميه وصمائر المتكلم (l, my, me). يجب أن يتظمئ قصة سيسانه، وعلده ما ينظم ن أراء الكانب المتكلم (l, my, me). يجب أن يتظمئ قصة سيسانه، وعلده ما ينظمن قصة ومشاعره حول تدارية عالنا ما يضيف المدوزون يدورا لدهل بدول تدارية عالنا ما يضيف المدوزون يدورا لدهل بدول تدارية عالنا ما يضيف المدوزون يدورا لدهل بدول تدارية عالنا ما يضيف المدوزون يورا لدهل بدول تدارية عالنا ما يضيف المدوزون يدورا لدهل بدول تدارية عالنا ما يضيف

### Hashwa's blog

### All the fun of the Carnival!

Tuesday June 3rd

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

The children's section has nine rides including the Orient Train. We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet!

Connect 6 +

Unit 3

In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater. You sit in In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the street of the afternoon and the street of the st your seat with big screens all around your seat with a screen your seat with a screen your seat with the screen your seat with a screen your seat with effects. It feels like you're in unierth per realistic - I can't wait! What mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic - I can't wait! What mountains even under the ocean and Dad! great birthday present - thanks Mom and Dadt

-52 --- 1 --- 1 يرمعه مدينة الملاهي!

المراد مدارد من الازام من الزام من الزام من دريم بارك من مدينه الجيزة عائل أنا من مدينه الجيزة من مدينه الجيزة رواد أن عند منادم، الخصوا أربد أن أخاركم بكل سمء عن المكان. الإرادة المنادم، الخصوا أربد أن أخاركم بكل سمء عن المكان.

ر يعلى إلى المسرّق نجد نفسك مد أن مين عائم حبالي النه أمر مثير للعايم، هياك سالمكر رؤبته والقيام به هنا. هناك ألعان ركون رائعه بمكنك نجريها مثل قطار رفير (بدا كنت شجاعًا!)، ومسارح در ت بمكنك مساهده العروض. وهناك أماكن لتناول لطعام ومتاجر أيضًا.

مرس عسم الأطمال علم نسع ألعان ركون، بما مم دلك "مطار انشرق". لدينا تذاكر بير اللعدة الساعة 10 - بحب أد ي ركوب الألعاب المائية، لذلك فهـو بريـد ركـوب بعـض ية المركب ومن لاحق من صباح البوم، من الساعة الحادية عشر والنصف، لدينا بذاكر للعبة العرب بعض اللعبة على بعص الأقسى العالية، لذا فهي مخبفة بعص الشيء، الغاية! وكوبها تبتل للغاية!

ي أيا وألب الذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة بعد الظهر. حيث تجنس في مقعدك وحولك يَالِيهِ، كَبِيرِهُ مِـن كُلُ اتْجِـاهِ، وهنـاك تأثيـران صوتيـة وضوئيـة، وتشـعر وكأنـك فـي أماكـن منافة دول العالم - الجبال الثلجية، وحتى نحت المحيط إنها واقعية للغاية - لا أُطيق النظار الله عن هدية عيد ميلاد رائعه - شكرًا بـا أمـي ويـا أبـي!



## sharm El-Sheikh - an amazing poliday destination! سرم الشيخ - وجهة مذهلة لقضاء العُطلات

For only LE 1000 per night, per orson in a double room.

El-Sheikh is an interesting and in Egypt by the Red Sea nere are lots of things to see and do. 22 22 22 22 22



n the sea

المالكة في المالكة الم

eax at the beach

• الاسترخاء على الشاطئ.



· go quad biking in the desert • الذهاب لركوب الدراحات الرباعية في الصحراء.



visit St Catherine's monastery

ا دری ۱۱۱ سیب کرتریس

· eat good food

والمام ديد

### How to make a beethure

#### How to make a tourist brochure

- 1 Find some photos or pictures of the places you want to include in your brochure.
- 2. Write a description of each place under the photos.
- 3. Check that the spelling, grammar, and punctuation is correct.

#### 🗷 كيفية عمل منشور سياحي

- الحث عن بعض الصور أو الرسومات للأماكن انـــــي تريد أن تُضفَيها من منشورة
  - 2. اكتب وصفًا لكل مكان تحت الصور.
  - 3. نأكد من صحة الإملاء والقواعد البعوية وعنامات الترغيم.

## Exercises on Lussons 5

- 1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box;
  - Manar is talking to Omnia on the phone.

### fantasy - birthday - theater - present - rollercoaster

Manar : Hi, Omnia. Where are you now?

Omnia: Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special 

surprise at the

Carnival.

Manar : Happy birthday! How is it?

Omnia: It's a world of 2 - it's really exciting.

Manar: What about the rides there?

Omnia: There are amazing rides to try like the 3

(if you're brave!), the Orient Train, and the Waterfalls.

Manar: What a great birthday 4 .....!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### effects - environment - screens - realistic - theater

I want to go to the simulation ①

. When you go there,

you sit in your seat with big ②

all around you, and

there are sound and light 3

, and it feels like you're

in different places around the world - snowy mountains, even under the

ocean. It's very (9) ! What a great experience!

# Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Hill I'm Tamer Today is my birthday, and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnivall I want to tell you all about it. When you arrive at the Carnival, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here There are amazing rides to try, like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. You can try the rollercoaster if you are (scared sad brave).
- 2. The underlined word 'exciting' means (interesting boring tiring).

### Answer these questions:

- 3. Where is Tamer today? Who is with him?
- 4. Why are they at this place?

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1, at the Carnival with family 'm my.
- 2. are shows of a lot and concerts There.
- 3. don't like rollercoasters I.
- 4. Talia with Did enjoy you your time?

?

- 5 waterfalls We for have the tickets
  - 6. I go to want to simulation the theater.
- 5 Punctuate the following sentences:
  - 1. I love my special birthday surprise at the carnival
    - The second second second second second
  - 2. no you can t eat my burgers
  - 3. is mohamed salah a good footballer
  - 4. who s your favorite singer
  - 5. i enjoy my time with my family a lot
- 6 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

  "A day at the Carnival"

ldeas to help you:

rollercoaster - Orient Train - simulation theater - Waterfalls - enjoy - play



## Test (5) on Unit (3)

براران والإرمرالا

(1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

cash par a gargerial du

the Amar's (second first third) has now in

2 Amal wants to (climb up climb down see) the tall to the borne of Abu

3, there is a great (scene view look) from there

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:03M.,

### Dome - View - Vacation - sunset

Amal : I'm really excited about our 1,

ratima: Yes, me too! Hove visiting new places! Where can we go?

: Can we go visit the (2) Amal

of Abu Al Hawa?

Fatima: What can we do there?

; We can climb up the hill to the dome there's a great Amal

(3) from there!

Fatima: That's a good idea. Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We

can watch the sunset.

### 3) Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

If she (go - goes - will go) by bus, it is quicker.

2 I sometimes go to bed (on - in - at) midnight.

3. Can he (help - helps - helping) you when you need help?

4. His birthday is (in - on - at) March 11th.

### Read the text and answer the questions:

(Chis.

Mr. Ahmed is a teacher who works at a prep school in Giza. He teaches English. He is thirty years old. He lives in a nouse near school, so he walks to his work every day. Mr. Ahmed is married to Eman. They haven't got any children yet. Eman is a housewife, and she is four years younger han her husband. Ahmed likes reading and watching TV in his free time.

Connect 6-

121

Eman prefers playing computer games in her free time. She also it watching TV.
Choose the correct answer:
1. Eman is (30 - 26 - 24) years old. 2. Eman works at (school - home - hospital).
Answer these questions:
3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
4. What does Eman do in her free time?
Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
1. is - She - of - heights - afraid.
2. has - lake - from - the - Wolf - a drink.
3. your - are - What - tips - for - studying?
6 Punctuate the following sentence:
should tamer go quad biking on wednesday
7 Write an email to your friend Shaza:
Tell her how you organize your study to get ready for the midterm to how you take breaks between study times, and the subjects you're at and not good at. Your email address is menna@yahoo.com. And friend's email address is shaza@hotmail.com.
From :
Subject:
(92)
Step Arti

Cantilla the A war sage

### A Test 6 on Unit (3)

يط الاستماع موجودان اخر الكتاب.

1) Listen and choose the correct answer:



When you arrive at the (zoo - garden - Carnival - school), you are

You can try the (rollercoaster - Waterfalls - Raging River - Orient Train)

3. You can watch shows and concerts in the (cinemas-schools restaurants

### 2) Listen and complete the sentences:



(3M)

f. Today is my

2.1'm with my family at the

3. There are amazing rides to try like the

if you are brave.

### 3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. Where do you usually go (on - in - to - for) the weekend?

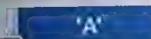
2 If you work for a long time without breaks, you (can - can't - will - wouldn't) concentrate.

3. When she (go - will go - can go - goes) to bed late, she's tired and lazy in the morning.

4.1 often get lots of presents (at - in - on - of) my birthday.

#### Read and match "A" with "B":

(5Ms)



I'm excited about our vacation.

2 We can climb up to the top,

3. Where will the guide meet us?

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting

Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret.

4B4

a) He will meet us at the hotel.

b) Okay, cool!

c) stops for a nice cool drink.

d) there's a great view from there!

e) Yes, me too!

f) city in Egypt by the Red Sea.

123

Connect 6

Cambia and a Last taking



## Read the text and answer the questions:

(GIL

Hi Mazen, Here we are in Sharm El-Sheikh. We are having a great time The hote our room is really nice, as it looks over the sea. There are lots of care Our room is really nice, as it looks over and delicious food but it and restaurants here. They have fantastic and delicious food but it and restaurants here. They have fantastic and delicious food but it and restaurants here. and restaurants here. They have lamade Sunday, but the weather is great cheap. It was windy when we arrived on Sunday, but the weather is great day. The people here are no cheap. It was windy when we arrived on the people here are nice and today. We go to the beach every day. The people here are nice and friendly. I'm so happy. Bye for now,

Fady



### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The opposite of the underlined word 'biggest' is (shortest tall ; ) smallest - largest)
- 2. The food in restaurants is (cheap very cheap not expens ve report



#### Answer these questions:

3. Who wrote this email?

- 4. How are the restaurants in Sharm El-Sheikh?

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. do school days you When on get up?
- 2. go to and ride on Let's the theme park a rollercoaster!
- 3. doesn't she Suddenty feel any more scared.

#### Punctuate the following sentence:

- fatima's favorite cousin amal comes to visit her in aswan

Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5)



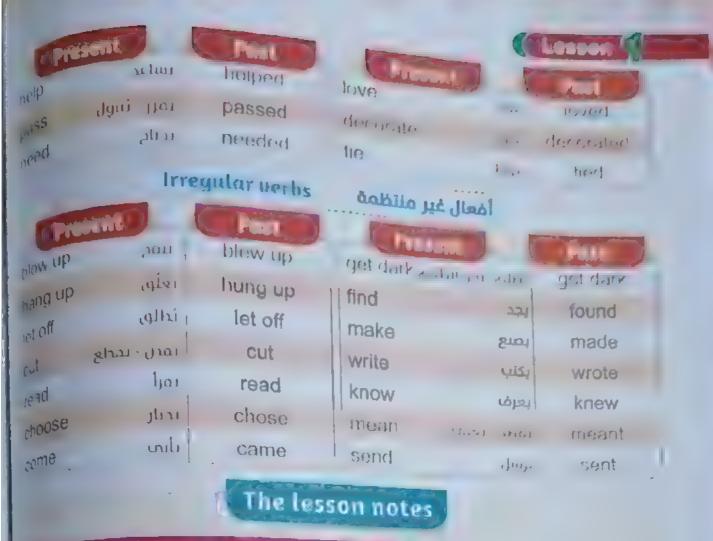
#### "A visit to Cairo Tower"

- ▶ When did you go?
- What did you eat?
- Who did you go with?
- What did you do there?
- ▶ What did you see at the top?









### in tying the streamers together.

- أنا أربط أشرطة الزينة المُلَوَّنة مع بعضها.
- كلمة "tying" هي في الأصل كلمة "tie".
- لاحظ أن: عند إضافة "ing" لفعل منتهٍ بـ "ie"، تُحول الـ "ie" إلى "y".

die ▶ ▶ dying lie ▶ ▶ lying tie >>> tying

R5VP

PRSVP" is an initialism of the French phrase, "répondez s'il vous plaît.". This directly translates to "Respond, if you please.". The initialism is often used to confirm attendance for an event, such as a wedding or birthday party.

"répondez s'il vous plaît." هي الحروف الأولى من العبارة الفرنسية "RSVP" 💻 وترجمنها هي "رُدّ إذا سمحت". غالبًا ما تُستخدم هذه الأحرف الأولى لتأكيد الحضور لحدثٍ ما، مثل حفل زفاف أو حفلة عيد ميلاد.

In China, people eat nood es on their birthday.

The noodles are very long to represent a long.

الصال المعلى الأولى البياس البود لـز (مكرونة هيسة) في أعلى مبيلادهم، البودار تكون طويلة جـدًا لتمثّل حياة طويلة جـدًا لتمثّل حياة طويلة بـدًا لتمثّل حياة المثاردين.



### Read and learn

Links of

# Rani: Hi Youssef, what are you doing?

Youssef: Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Nesma's party. Can you help me?

Hani : Sure. What can I do, cousin?

Youssef: Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers together and I need to cut the string. Can you also blow up some balloons? We need to hang those up too.

Hani : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?

Youssef: Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it, too. Oh, theres Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations?

Amina : Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone ema invitations.

Youssef: Good idea. How many people are coming?



: I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP" on the invitations. That Amina means everyone has to let me know if they're coming.

: Who's choosing the music? Hani

: Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone. She made **Amina** one for my party and it was really great

: That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to make Hani it after she finishes the cake.

: And we need to find an adult to let off the fireworks in the **Amina** yard when it gets dark.

Youssef: Yes, Nesma loves them, I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

🛴 هانی : مرحبًا یا یوسف، ماذا تفعل؟

National Property lies

يوسف مرحبًا يا هاني. أنا أُغلَّق الأشرطة المُلَوِّنة من أجل حفلة أختب نسمة. هل بامكانك مساعدته؟

ابن عمي؟ عاني عادا يمكنني أن أفعل يا ابن عمي؟

يوسف: هلّا تناولني المفص من فضلك؟ أنا أربط الأشرطة المُلَوَّنة ببعضها وأحتاج أن أقطع الخيط. هل يمكنك نَفْخُ بعض البالونات أيضًا؟ فنحن بحاجة إلى تعليقها

هانب : بالطبع! ماذا تفعل شقيقَتَيْك الأُخْرَيَيْن؟ هل تساعدان؟

يوسف: داليدا ونهم؟ نعم إنهما بساعدان، إنهما يُزِّيِّنُـن كعكة عيد الميلاد. ولديهم شموع من أجل ذلك أبضًـ. أوه، ها هي أمبنة. أمينة! هل تُرسلين الدعوان؛

أمينة : مرحبًا يا يوسف. نعم، أنا أفعل ذلك. لكنني أُرسل دعوات بالبريد الإلكتروس للحميع.

و بسر مکره دیده کم عدد الدین سید صرون

أمينة ؛ لست متأكدة بعد، لكنني كتيثُ أحيين من مصلك" على الدعوان. وهد رهيم أنه بد ب على اندمنغ إحيارات ما إذا كانوا مادمين.

مانى : من سيختار الموسيقى؟

إيب سنعدُ دالبدا مائمه بشعبل على هابقها. لقد أعدَتَ قائمة تشغيل لحفلتي

ماس : هذا صحيح. لقد كانت جيدة جدًا. بمكننا أن نطلب ميها إعداد فائمة تشعيل بعد أن نسمت من إعداد الكعكة.

إمبية : ونحن بحاجة إلى إيجاد شخص بالغ لإطلاق الألعاب النارية في الفناء عندما يدَلُ الظلام.

﴿ رِوسَفِ: نَعْمَ، نَسْمَةَ تَحْبِهَا. أَعْرَفُ شَخْصًا، سأطلب مِنْ والدِّبِ معل ذلك.

### Exercises on Lesson

Read and match "A" with "B":

- 1. Who is the birthday party for?
- Let's hang up
- 3. You can blow
- I'm sending everyone
- 5. Dalida is decorating

a) the birthday cake.

'B'

- b) up some balloons.
- c) in the yard.
- d) It's for Nesma.
- e) email invitations.
- f) the streamers.

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. We need an adult to let off the (streamers fireworks balloons).
- 2. Mahmoud has a very nice (playlist invitation cake) on his mobile can play it at the party.
- 3. Can you (let off know send) them email invitations?
- 4. Give me the scissors to cut the (string birthday cake cand'es).

Step Ahe:

6. My mom loves (decorating - har graphy to the wing up) birthday cakes 6. I'm (hanging - blowing - "Griding) up the streamers for his area gardy Can you (decerate - lot og - more up) some be accessed We can ask Tamer to (b , the take the state of the state Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box. balloons - hanging - birthday - happy - string : Hi Youssef, what are you doing? напу Youssef: Hi, Hany Im Nesma's party Can you help me? up the stroumers for mys ster : Sure. What can I do, cousin? youssef: Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers together and I need to cut the also blow up some . Can you ? We need to hang those up too. : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are tried he ping? youssef: Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the cake. They have candles for it too Reorder the words to make correct sentences: Will - come to - you - party - my - birthday? 2 chocolate - don't - I - like - cakes - the. 3. the - My - all - decorates - cakes - mom. 4. My - is - brother - the - balloons - blowing up. 5. fireworks - Did - the - you - off - let? 6. some - play - Let's - music - nice. 7. you - Are - the - sending - invitations? ? Somect 6

narty - Dalida.	
8. a playlist - made - my - for - party - Dalida.	
9 an adult - We - need - off to let - the fireworks.	
9 an adult - We - need - O	
10. all - love - I - friends - my.	
5 Punctuate the following sentences:	
1. what are nesma's sisters doing	
2. they don t like carnivals	
3. let's go to sharm el-sherkh on monday	
4. do you enjoy your vacation	
5. no i can t do this right now	
The second secon	3
6. da ida and noha are decorating the birthday cake	
Company of the your frie	nd Dad
6 Write an email of (50) words to your frie	
Invite her to your birthday party, and tell her about to party. Your email address is mona@gmail.com, address is radwa@yahoo.com.	ne arrangements in and your friends en
From :	
To :	
Subject :	
	,
32)	Standi





### Main Vocabulary ....











exams util not

documentary unabliq

### Extra Vocabulary

كلمان إمامته

### Depressions and Properties

get outside

يذهب إلى الخارج

how our revision is going

كبفية سيّر المراجعة

do some exercise

chipail asu aquis taking ay to

يسعرق وقثا طوبلأ جذا

o few times a week

Licgual വ്വര ബ<sup>'</sup>look forward to

يتطلع إلى

Now reader

embi injui indoors

داحل البيب

### Conjugation of the

Regular verbs

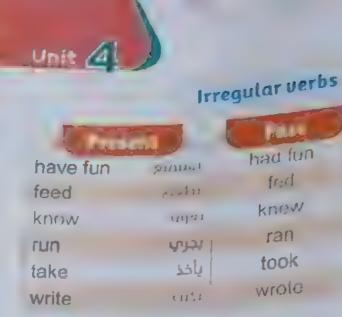
أفعال منتظمة

#### 181 Prosection relaxed بسترخي - بستريح re ax borrowed וווויאון WOTOC talked يتكلق talk enjoyed يستمتع enjoy finished ന്മപ് frish played Day بلعب

The state of	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	And the second
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
practice	يُمارس - يتدرّب	practiced
bake	ز بحبر	baked
live	ٍ يعيش	lived
study	يُذَاكِر ٠ يَدْرُس	studied
try	يُحَاوِل	tried

Connect 6 -

133



مسطمة	ببذ	أضعال
-------	-----	-------

The same of the sa		100
spend (time) (Cos	العَضِيُّ (ا	Chris.
go	ודפה	Went
get me col prod	Turn 1	301 10
say	، بعوال	San
tell	پخېر	tolg
wear	الارتياا	Weste.

### Read and learn

From : ali@qwikmail.com : eyad@egyptmall.com

Subject: What's your news?

Hi Eyad,

How are things?

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, Im. spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do son exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling: the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a lies too - it's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to take as how our revision is going! My friend Asser is organizing a party at his nouse! the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already! 🙂

frid

knew

ran

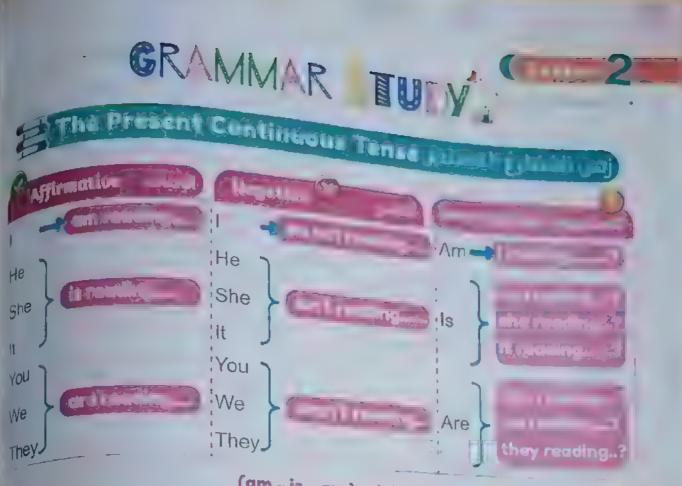
took

wrote

In your last email, you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing Everything in Ancient Egypt but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reace I am enjoying it - I love history books - and the documentary is good, too mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you read ro

Write soon and tell me your news,

Ali



- We use it to talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.
  - يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن ومستمر أثناء الكلام.
  - Two boys are playing football now.
  - O We're helping to make the birthday cake at the moment.
- We also use it to talk about actions in progress around now.
- يُستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عن نشاط يتم في الفترة الحالية وليس بالضرورة أنه يقع لحظة الكلام.
  - OI'm studying for my exams this week.
  - OMy dad is building a new house these days.
  - OWe are practicing for the football game. It's on Sunday.
  - OThey are building new cities in the desert this year.

135

■ We also use it to de	scribe things ا	that are hap تي تحدث في , oing there in	pening in a p وصف الأشياء ا the picture?	icture. ا لضْيا أ
O What are Noha  ► They're play	and Dallua of	h the balloo	ns.	
We sometimes use so		th the prese	nt continuou م بعض الكلمان	ıs tense. منانا ما ثنين
Look	الآن الآل فرب هده ا انظر	today this (week) Listen	<u> </u>	المرادة - المرتبع - إند الراساني - إند الراساني - أند
O She's talking on O I'm reading an E O Look! A dog is pl O Listen! Birds are O She's doing lots  When verbs end in a	inglish book raying with a singing.  of housework	today.	adding (ing).	اند إضافة ( <b>ing</b>
have ▶ having		writing	come	► coming
make making		<ul><li>riding</li><li>waking</li></ul>	shine	- Trining
wave waving  When verbs end in a consonant before add	consonant af			or o
, في النطق، <mark>نضاعف الحرف</mark>	حد متحرك قوى		بحر <mark>ف ساكن ي</mark> بل إضافة الـ (g	
run > running	aig 🕨	digging	swim	▶ swimma:
put > putting	step 🕨	stopp ng	cut	▶ cutting_
136				Step Ale

the negative form, we add (not) after (am - is - are). عد النفي نُضيف (not) بعد (am - is - are). They aren't enjoying their vacation oshe isn't doing her homework at the moment the interrogative form, we use (am - is - are) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the (v. + ing). اً و نضع إحداها بي (am - is - are) عند عمل سؤال على المصارع المستمر، نبدأ السؤال بـ (am - is - are) أو نضع إحداها بي أداة الاستفهام مع ( الفعل + ing ). Are you reading now? ▶ No, Lam not. als he riding his bike? Yes, he is. OWhat are you doing, girls? ► We're helping to make the birthday cake ► He's painting a picture. Excraise on Lason Read and match "A" with "B": imstudying hard a) do some exercise, too. at's important to get outside and b) a party at his house. What are you doing? c) Yes, he is. My friend Asser is organizing d) No, she isn't. s is she at the party? e) I'm reading a book.

### 2 Choose the correct answer:

The students (are - am - is) practicing hard for a music concert next month.

f) for my exams.

Minect 6 -----

- 2 Nesma (am not is is not) wearing a red T-shirt. She's wearing a blue on Address of
  - 3. The girls (am not is are not) dancing.
- 4. (He They I) are playing football. 5. Tamer (are - am - is) wearing a party hat.
  - 6. She (are am is) reading a book in an armchair.
  - 7. We (aren't isn't is) enjoying our vacation.
  - 8. She's (studying study studies) for her exams this week.

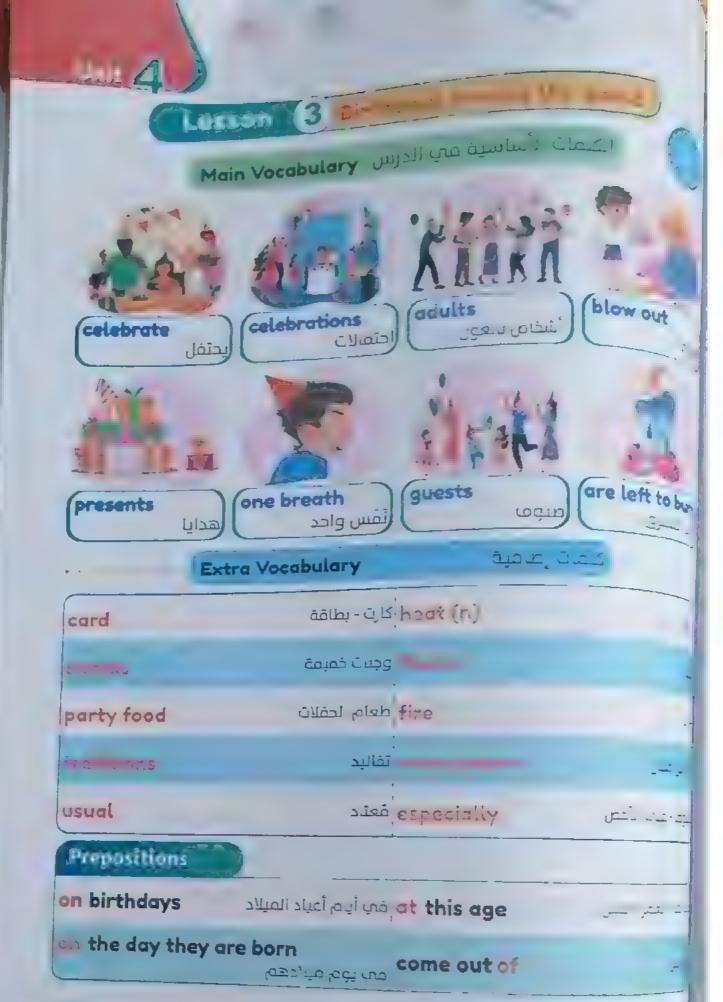
  - 9. (Am Is Are) you playing football this year? Yes. (I am - I'm not - they are).
  - 10. What are you (does do doing), girls?
  - 11. We're (help helps helping) to make the birthday cake, 12. My dad (are working - work - is working) in France for three months

  - 13. Where (are am is) your brother studying in the USA? 14. Prices (ועיייצון) are (goes up - going up - go up) a lot this year.
- 15. Where (are am is) Basel and Amir playing their football game toda
- 16. I'm (practicing practice practices) for the football game.
- 17. I (am not am is) playing basketball this week; I have too much scho work.
- 18. What (are not are is) you doing this week, Malak?
- 19. Two boys (play plays are playing) volleyball at the moment.
- 20. What (are am is) Noha and Dalida doing there?
- 21. The boys (eat are eating eats) pizza now.
- 22. Hany and Youssef are (try trying tries) to climb the tree.
- 23. We (have fun has fun are having fun) at the beach these days,
- 24. (Are Am Is) he wearing a blue T-snirt?
- 25. Look! Three girls (cycle are cycling cycles) to the park.
- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
  - 1. We the decorations buying today are.

2 playing - Are - a - they - game? 1 wearing - a - hat - I'm - new Ahmed - is - cakes - eating. ssters - My - cooking - food - some - are 6) our - taking - dad - Is - photos? 1 nelping - Laila and Mona - their - are - mom. punctuate the following sentences: muhammad isn t playing basketball 2 ne s wearing a wonderful suit 3 we aren t enjoying our vacation 4,70 i am not happy 5, 5 aliaa eating her sandwich Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: "What are you and your family doing these days?" read - work - cook - do - wash - watch - play has to help your

menect 6

Carchianne is used to see



140



انعو- و الصين البر'ريل Opinson

: fully grown people, not children adults

: to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame plow out : the air that comes out of your mouth risesio

noodles

: a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs : people you invite to your home quests

## - Lightlin of Orms

#### Requiar verbs أفعال منتظمة

guess	يُخَمِّن	guessed	invite	ىدعو (يعرم)	invited
eebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	produce	كِنَا	produced
include	يشمل	included	measure	يقىس	measured

#### irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

		Fm:		TIL .	
give	بُعْظِس	gave	become	يُصبح	became
make	يصنع	made	get	تحمل على	got
eave	يترك	left	sing	لِغَلْي	sang
show	يُظهِر - يُبَيِّن	showed	read	_ يقرأ	read

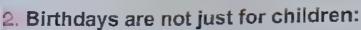
lamect 6=

To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for key words first To match headings to paragraph? Then look What is the topic of the key words that are the same or are about What is the topic of the key words that are the same or are about the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics? عن الكلمان الإنسان المقرات في نص ما، ابحث عن الكلمان الإنسان الرباد عن الكلمان الرباد عن الرباد عن الرباد عن الرباد عن الكلمان الرباد عن الكلمان الرباد عن الربا أسره من كل مِعرَف من انظر إلى العناقين هل هنال من دي من المنافين

### Read and learn

### Or Contagning to second 1 has propried. Our birthday celebrations:

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age . We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.



What about in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is usual a to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even o when they are adults. People often give other people birthday cards too, especially on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.



الا امس المواصيع؟

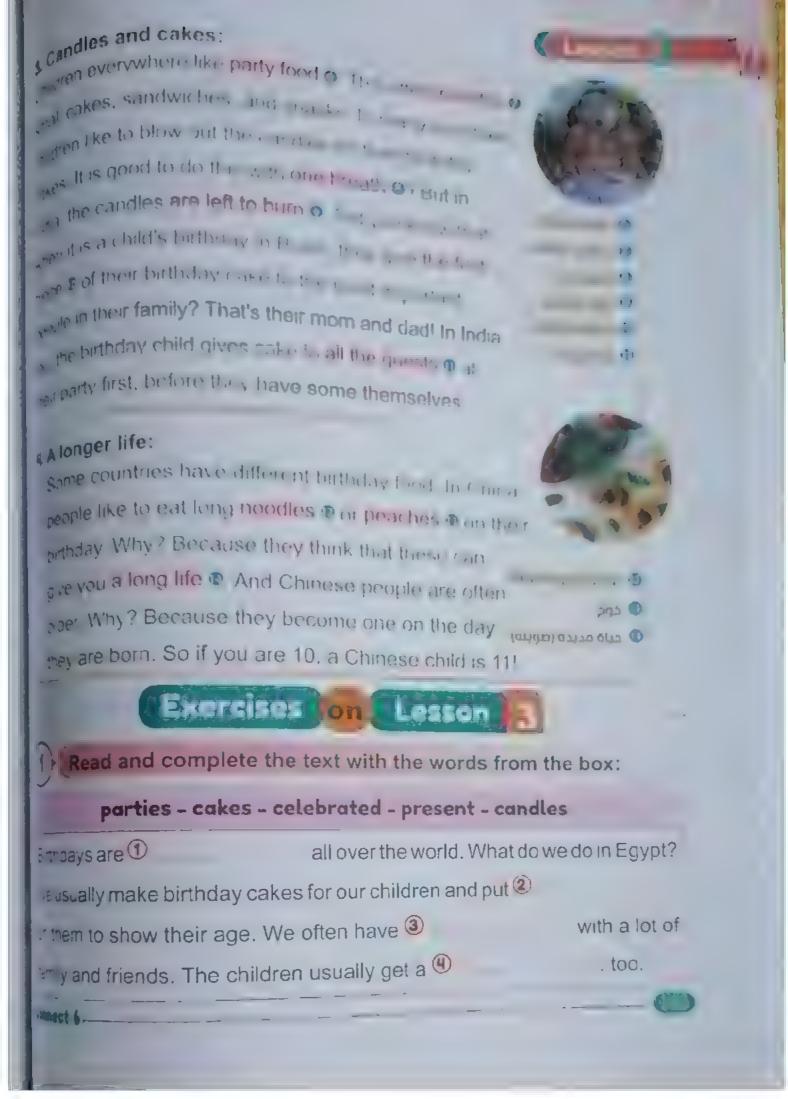
و نمور أعمارهم

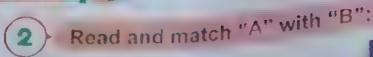


المعتاد

ும் ()

المعونيا - حاصه







1. blow out

quests

3. adults

noodles

5, breath

a) to send air through your mouth to stop a fig

484

- b) fully grown people, not children
- c) people you invite to your home
- d) the air that comes out of your mouth
- e) a long, thin piece of food made from flour water, and eggs
- Write the following words in the correct column:

cake - bed - head - shed - train - say - bread - pay - wait - pen



/ei/

### 4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Is this the (main men) paragraph in the text?
- 2. I think the tools are in the (shed shade).
- 3. I want to (sail sell) a boat!
- 4. I (met mate) my friend Gameela at elementary school.
- 5. Hany has a (pain pen) in his foot.

Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, Children and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles are left to burn for this with one breath! But In India, the candles are left to burn. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. In many countries, children like to (blow up blow out hang up) the candles on their birthday cakes.
- 2 In India, the (presents cakes candles) are left to burn.

### Answer these questions:

- 3. What do children like everywhere?
- What do they do in Brazil when it is a child's birthday?

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

birthday - often - People - give - cards - other people.

2 we - usually - do - birthday parties - Who - invite to?

3, food - Children - everywhere- party - like.

4 interesting - the most - Which - is - tradition - birthday?

5, countries - food - Some - birthday - different - have.

6. birthdays - in your family - celebrate - you - How - do? 

7. ike - blow - Children - to - the candles - out.

Connect 6

- Step Ahm





### Regular verbs

# أفعال منتظمة

			-	1000
help		zelmi		helped
attend	cljhir	اددرر		attended

confirmed Shi confirm

organized ahli organize

	27.
receive along thating plants	recoved
celebrate justice	celebrated
يدعو (شخص لشماء) ınvite	invited
reply y.	Tep en



### Read and Learn

: cerebrationgroup a p maralous citool.com From

: Mr Ahmed Hegazy To

Subject: Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day o celebration of this year. We are organizing a special day of for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below 0). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community 9 who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Sunday March 21

Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm

Location: School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

Please reply by February 20 to confirm 6 if you can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal



विमा भर ।

و عمصل بالاسمل

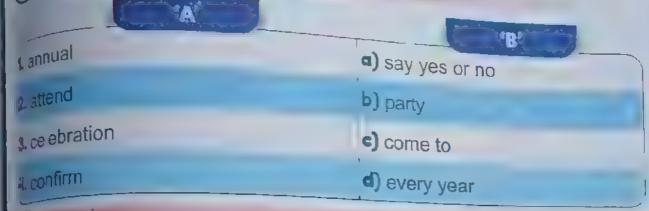


well. We use polito la peak or write to people we don't the use polite language and correct spelling and

نستخدم لغة رسمية عندما يتحدث مع أشخاص الايمرمه حبدا أو الدما بحب المحم Travill a. 175 (vo vistin ride rejdod epoja nigova od brigina)



Read and match "A" with "B".



### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 invite - Mother's Day - celebration - I - to my school's - you.

2 are - a - day - special - organizing - We.

3. inviting - from - community - local - people - We are.

4 your friends - with - Did - enjoy - you - your time?

5. We - party - for - have - the - tickets.

6.1 - go to - to - want - zoo - the.

Connect 6 -

(3)

# Read the following text and answer the questions below:

: celebrationgroup@binhaddouschool.com

To : Mr Ahmed Hegazy

Subject : Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed.

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year writing to invite you to our school sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (deta. We are organized as a students and teachers. We are organized as a students and teachers. We are organized as a students and teachers.

Date: Sunday March 21

Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm

Location: School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

Please reply by February 20 + confirm if you

can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I am writing to ( - ) you to our school's Mother's Da celebration.
- 2. The event is on ( ) March 21.



#### Answer these questions:

- 3. Who is the invitation addressed to?
  - -
- 4. When does Randa ask to receive Mr Ahmed's reply?

150

SHAR

# Punctuate the following sentences:



we very much hope you can attend

- 2 no you can t share these documents with anyone
- g marcel koller is a successful coach
- 4, who s your favorite actor
- 5. i enjoy my time with my friends a lot

# Write a formal invitation of 50 words:

You are having a celebration in your school or community. Use Randa's email to help you. Remember to include a subject heading, the name of the person you are inviting, and information about:

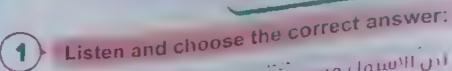
#### Heat to help you:

- what the celebration is for
- where it is

- when it is (time and date)
- when the person has to reply

# Test 7 on Unit (4)

خاص بالأرهر السربما



ابل الاستماع موجود أدر الكتاب.

- 1. In Egypt, we usually make birthday (food fruit cakes).
- 2. The children usually get a/an (age present candle)
- 3. We often have parties with a lot of (family boys girls) and friends
- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box; 1,

# party - playlist - fireworks - invitations

Youssef: Hi Amina. What are you doing?

Amina : Hi Youssef. I'm sending everyone email

Youssef: Good idea.

: Who's choosing the music for the party? Hany

Amina : We can ask Dalida to make a

And we

need to find someone for the fireworks.

Youssef: Yes, Nesma loves them We need an adult to let off the

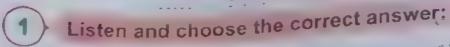
in the yard I know, I'll ask my dad to do-

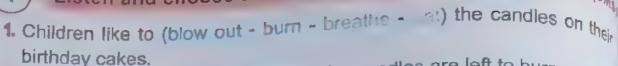
- Choose the correct answer:
  - 1. She is (wears wore wearing) a white diess
- 2. (Do Am Is Are) you washing the glasses?
- 3. They are blowing up some (streamers balloons invitations) for the pro-
- 4. We (play played are playing) football at the moment.

Read the text and answer the questions: My name is Ahmed. In the summer, I have a lot of free time to enjoy in My name is remarkable in the afternoon, I love going to the beach and feeling the (6Ms) Alexandria. In Alexandria. We have going to the beach and feeling the cool water on my skin. Swimming is so much fun, and I can spend hours water of the wate pay beach volleyball, too. In the evening, I like to explore the city. I often Choose the correct answer: 1. Ahmed enjoys his free time in (Hurghada - Alexandria - Matrouh). 2. Ahmed loves feeling the (hot - warm - cool) water on his skin. Answer these questions: 3. What does Ahmed do on the beach? 4. What does Ahmed do in the evening? Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 1, drinking - We're - juice - orange - the beach - on. (3Ms) 2. Birthday - are - the same - not - everywhere - celebrations. 3, have - you - the - Do - term - exams? Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)i helped nada decorate the birthday cake Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms) "How do you spend your free time?" pideas to help you read - play football - go shopping - park - watch TV Connect 6

# Test 8 on Unit

نصا الاستماع موجودان أخر الكناب.





2. In (Nigena - Brazil - China - India), the candles are left to burn.

3. It is good to blow out the candles with one (

### Listen and complete the sentences:

1. I'm studing hard for

2. I'm going running every morning in the ...... 3. Aser is organizing a . . . . . . . . . . . at his house.

### Choose the correct answer:

1. They (are enjoying - enjoy - doesn't enjoy - arc ) their vacation The hotel they are staying in is very noisy.

) my sister's part, 2. I am not (organize - organizes - organize q - o

3. Where is she (goes - go - going - went)?

4. Is Khaled (writing - write - writes - wrote) the invitation?

### Read and match "A" with "B":

1. We need an adult to

2. When it's your birthday,

3. Do you often go to birthday parties?

4. Mariam is not

5. I am writing to invite you to

a) people give you presents.

b) making the cake.

c) let off the fireworks.

d) our school's Mother's Day celebration

e) Yes, I do my homework well.

1) No, I don't.

### Read the text and answer the questions:

It's July 7th. Today, Sally is seventeen years old. She's wearing a pretty new dress. It's blue and white. Sally is having a party today and she's expecting all her friends to come. They are going to arrive at Sally's house soon

(6Ms

(3M2

(4)/1

(5)4-

are going to bring many beautiful presents with them. gally is putting up decorations. She's hanging some balloons, anterns and cally is putting and the has made. Sally's mother has prepared special things.

They are going to have going to play games links. chains trick. Sally and her friends are going to play games, light candles. and drink. They are going to have a wonderful time together. Choose the correct answer: vextyear. Sally will be ( has a birthday party every ( ·) years old. Answer these questions: s, that does the underlined word 'They" refer to? what has Sally's mother prepared? Reorder the words to make correct sentences: wou - many years - hope - We - for - live. - on - am - a new - working - project. he event - are - on Friday - organizing - - for. punctuate the following sentence: (1M) people in egypt play games at birthday parties Write an email of (50) to your friend Jasmine: (5Ms) her to your school's annual celebration this year. Tell her all the necessary leails: cate, time, location ...etc. Your email address is and your friend's email address is Jasmine 2 ama co 100

# Amozing Journey Ulmite 5 رحلات مذهلة In this unit I will .... listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the pas talk about things that happened in the past using common irr → understand the difference between the sounds of and 3 understand specific detalls in a text. write a dlary entry to express feelings and mood. esearch and make a poster about a famous traveler.



#### كلمات إهامته

### Extra Vocabulary

The Description of the state of Lulgys China

Croatia

glqi g5jla w un Venice

(ருமால) <sub>சம்</sub> எரி<sup>ர்</sup>

Marco Polo museum

ا جزيرة كوركولا

Korcula Island

ייז יפלי סם

Hormuz

اِمْرَةُ مُرْمُزُ Hurghada

ronjugation of verb

Parlantine worked work يعمل discussed discuss يُنَاقِش listened listen يستمع wanted want يريد remembered ؠؾۮڴڔ remember visited visit يزور

ARTEN

_ Die	SUII	Pag
call	ம்ஜ்யர்	called
travel	ىسافر	traveled
sail	يُنجر	saled
stop	ىتوق <b>َف - يُوْمِّف</b>	stopped
imagine	بنصوَر - يتخيَّل	imagined
arrive	يَصِل	arr ved

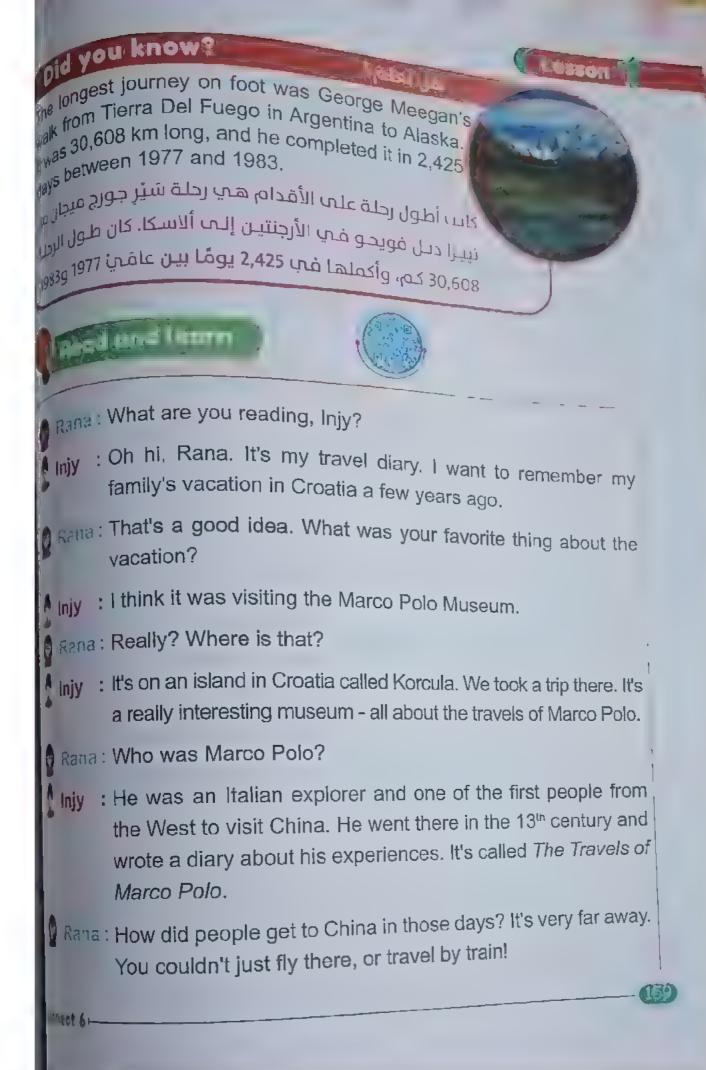
1,500

institution in the

resen. MORE went go بذهب do did يفعل know knew يعرف read read يقرآ fly flew يطير ride يركب rode

Phresi	em L	C. P. S
think	يُمْكُر	thought
take	بأخذ	took
write	شیرت ا	wrote
get to	يصل إلى	got to
can	يستصيع	could
come	بأتي	came

Step Ahea



Injy: It was very difficult - the journey took years! Marco Polo Nehice to on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Vehice to on a long voyage by sea. When he got to Hormus he Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormus he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a came all the way to China!

Rana: Wow, what an adventure!

Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 860 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life

#### ماذا تمرئين يا إنجي؟

أهل يا رنا. إنه بوميات السفر الحاصة بين. أربد أن أندكر غطله عائليين مي كروسا قبل ب<mark>صع سنوات.</mark>

هــه مكرة جيده. ماذا كان الشبء المعضل بالنسبة لك مي العطلة؟ أعتفد أنها **كانت زيارة متحف ماركو بولو.** 

حفًا؟ أين يتواجد؟

إنه على جريرة في كرواتبا تسمى كوركولا. لفد ممنا برحلة إلى هناك. إنه مندف مثير للاهتمام حقًا - يحتوي على كل ما بنعلق بأسفار ماركو بولو.

من کان مارکو بولو؟

كان مستكشفًا إيطالنًا ومن أوائل الأشخاص الذين زاروا الصين من الغرب. لقد ذهب إلم هناك من القرن الثالث عشر وكنب يوميات عن تحاربه. وتسمّم هذه اليوميات "أسفار ماركو بولو".

كيف كان الباس يدهبون إلى الصين في تلك الأيام؟ إنها بعبدة جدًا، ولم يكن يمكنك حينها الذهاب إلى هناك بالطائرة أو السمر بالقطار!

إحمي: كان الأمر تتعبًا للعانة - لقد استغُرَفَت الرحلة سنوات! ذهب ماركو بولو فمب رحلة بحرية طوئلة. أنجر بالسفينة من السدقية (فينيسيا) إنت كوركولا، ومنها إلى إنران. عندما وصل إلى مصنى هرمز، نوفف وشق طريقه عبر الصحراء،وركب جملًا طوال الطريق إلى الصين!

واو، يا لها من مغامرة!

نعم، ويخيلي الجمول إلى الصبل منذ ما بقرت من 820 عاماً كان الأمر مختلفًا جدا حبنها. لقد احتوم المنجف على الكثير من الأشباء من الصين المديمة لقد دعى المنجف قصة ماركو بولو تعود إلى الحياة فعلا

Carrison the Alleger said

# The tesson notes

بهماده Polo sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then معرفة الما إيران. 
 آبحر ماركو بولو من فينيسيا إلى كوركولا، ثم إلى إيران.

المر ماركو بولو من فيبيسي إلى الاستمرار، وهذا المعنى من ضمن استخداماته عرف الجر " في هذه الجملة يعطي معنى الاستمرار، وهذا المعنى من ضمن استخداماته

ه دانظار ، ۱ بری مسار play on

ي بنعر صري الحديث go on speak on

النعبير "go on" يعطي معنى "إسْنَمِر" أو "وَاضِل أي شيء تفعي

• • يصل إلى مكان غير محدد (كبير)، كمدينة أو دولة مثلاً.

The tourists arrived in Cairo (Egypt) at 10 o'clock.

ن بعنل إلى من محدد اصغيراً، أي نحدد المكان الذي وصل إليه الشخص في المدينة وا The tourists arrived at Cairo Airport at 10 o'clock.

### Exercises on Lesson

Read and match "A" with "B":

4

-

Who was Marco Polo?

i re wrote a diary about

What's your favorite

Marco Polo went on a long.

He rode a camel

(a) his experiences.

b) voyage by sea.

c) on foot.

d) all the way to Chinal

e) thing about the vacation?

f) He was an Italian explorer.

161

Service Services

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

# vacation - museum - reading - island - century

.., Injy?

Injy: Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember my family,

... in Croatia a few years ago.

Rana: That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation,

Injy: I think it was visiting the Marco Polo .......

Rana: Really? Where is that?

called Korcula. We took a trip there injy : it's on an

it's on an it's a really interesting museum all about the travels of Marco Polc

# Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the west to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a dian west to visit China. He went the Travels of Marco Polo. It was very about his experiences. It's called The Travels of Marco Polo. It was very difficult - the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran, When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

### A Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Marco Polo was an Italian (king explorer inventor).
- 2. When he got to Hormuz, he rode a (bike horse camel) all the way to China.

### Answer these questions:

- 3. When did Marco Polo visit China?
- 4. What's his diary called?

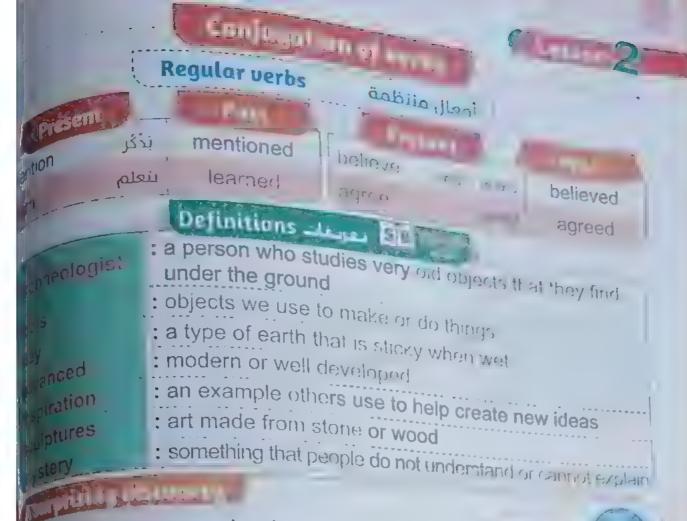
### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. I Dahab went to with grandparents my.
- 2. go to I with Hurghada family my.

Step Aht

Where - last - was - your - trip? polo - is - Marco - an - explorer - Italian. wrote - dad - about - a diary - his experiences. rom - sailed - Marco Polo - by ship - to Korcula - Venice. vacation - enjoy - We - the - last - didn't. punctuate the following sentences: museum had a lot of objects from ancient china what's your favorite thing about the vacation 3, we don t have any drinks here thow did people get to india in those days snoican tread it Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: "How I spent my last vacation" hes to help your ▶Where did you spend it? ► Who did you go with? Mnat did you do there? ▶ Did you like it or not? atct 6 -





100 years ago, local people in the small age of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, some unusual objects under the ground. These were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The lightures were all in the same style; they had large and complicated hair styles. They were usually

sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work incredible.

Inform of archaeologists went to the area to find informer. They found many similar sculptures in area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists agreed these were most from a very advanced culture from around in BCE to 200 CE. It was a civilization which it is ability to work iron and stone to make its, and which made beautiful art.



They called this culture the 'Nok" civilization, after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures were in Nigeria from for the famous works of art by the later life people, who were in Nigeria from the famous works of art by the later life were famous for making beautiful to the 15th century CE. The life were is no written information metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information about the Nok people so we can only learn about them from their art. The coulture is still a mystery today.



بري من 100 علم، وجد السكان المحليون في قرية بري سي باحدريا، وهي دولة تقع في عرب إفريميا، بري علم العادية بحث الأرض. كانت بلك الأسياء عبار، بري (بهاجي منحونة) طيبية حميلة لسخيمان بشرية به عبد المتحويات بنفس الأسلوب: كانت لها عبول كبيرة

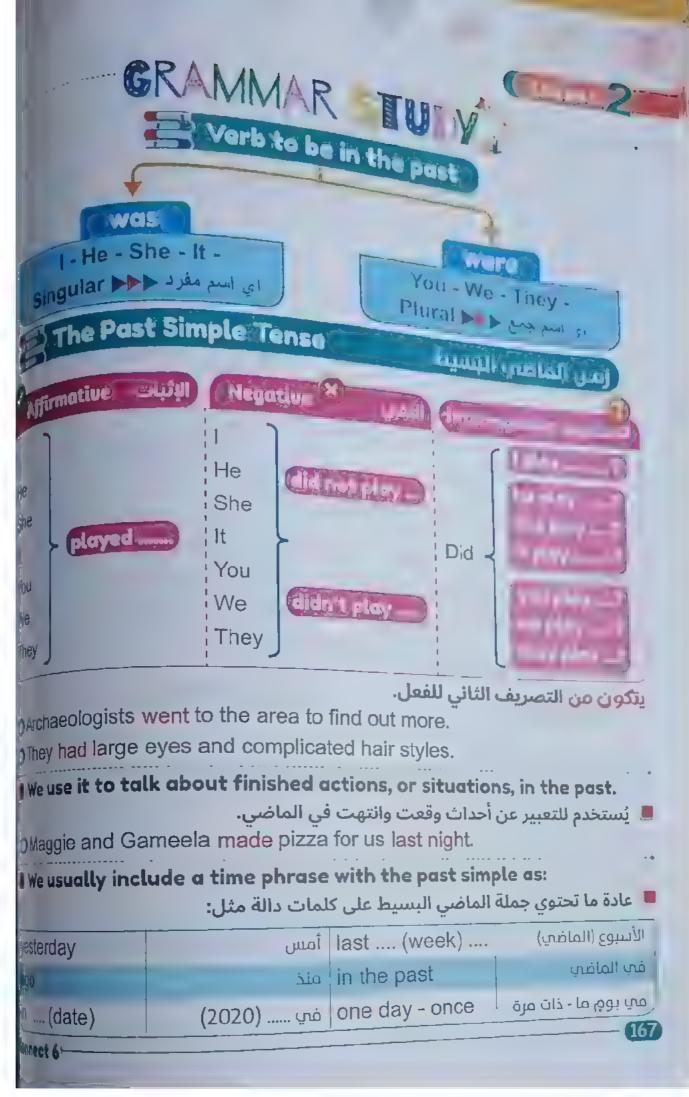
الله الله الله الله الله (مُصفرة). وكانت معظمها مي وتبعيت الجنوس والدنها البيالية.

عرب من علماء الآبار إلى المنطقة لاكتشاه المزيد، ووجدوا العديد من عنونات المماثلة في منطقة تبلغ مساحتها مثبات الكيلومترات حول نوك. وكانت الثانية أدوات زراعة حديدية وحجرية. اتفق علماء الآثار على أن هذه الأشياء كانت بالأغلب من ثقافة متقدمة جدًا من حوالي سنة 500 قبل الميلاد إلى سنة 200 قبل الميلاد إلى سنة 200 قبل الميلاد إلى سنة 200 ميلاً على أن حميارة لديها القدرة على تشكيل الدديد والحجارة لصبع الأدواب.



إلى القرية التي عُثِرَ فيها على المنحوتات. ألله القرية التي عُثِرَ فيها على المنحوتات. ألله القرية التي عُثِرَ فيها على المنحوتات. الألهام الفنية الشهيرة لشعب الإيفي اللاحقين، الذين عوافي نيجيريا من القرن الحادي عشر الميلادي إلى في الخامس عشر الميلادي الشتهر شعب الإيفي على الأووس بشرية. ومع عن منحوتات معدنية جميلة لرؤوس بشرية. ومع الأتوجد معلومات مكتوبة عن شعب نوك، لذلك الملاالتعرُّف عليهم إلا من خلال أعمالهم الفنية. لا المناهم الفنية. لا أعمالهم الفنية. لا المناهم الفنية. لا أعمالهم الفنية المناه المناه الفنية المناه المناه المناه المناه المناه المناه الفنية المناه المنا

نقافتهم غامضة حتاب اليوم.



Capitanne y way say

Read and complete the text with
clay - iron - Nigeria - culture - arche-
sculptures in this area, and 2
Their sculptures were usually of humans.
found - went - go - weren't
found - went - go - weren't - was - had
sameh: How was your trip, Karim?
the Western Desert
with your parents?  No, I was with my uncle. We  Some very pice sleep.
some very nice places.  sameh: Were there any other children on the trip?
No, there
Choose the correct answer: was - were
ıl(am - was - weren't) in Paris last month.
2 Mohamed Aboutrika (was - were - weren't) a good player.
The children (were - weren't - wasn't) in the classroom. They were in the lab.
Merna and I (are - was - were) in the same class last year.
The town (were - was - weren't) quiet ten years ago.
6.My grandpa (wasn't - isn't - was) a doctor. He was a teacher.
4Anect 6

- 7. (V. .: Were) you tired?
- 6 (Was Were) they from Italy?
- 9 Was there a beach?
- 10. (Was Were) Sara there?
- Yes, I (were wasn't was).
- No. they (aren't weren't were)
- Yes, there (were was wasni)
- No, she (isn't were wasn't).

# 5 Choose the correct answer: Past Simple

- 1. He (live lived lives) in Rome long ago.
- 2. My sister (tidled tidy tidles) her room yesterday.
- 3. He (brought was bring bring) me a bouquet of flowers.
- 4. The wind (blow blows blew) hard yesterday.
- 5. The tourists (doesn't speak didn't speak speaks) Spanish.
- 6. They (enjoy enjoyed enjoys) their trip last year.
- 7. (t)oes Is Did) he catch the bus? No, he (did don't didn't).
- 8. Everybody (watched was watch watch) the match.
- 9. Amina (doesn't don't didn't) clean the bathroom yesterday.
- 10. The car (was stop stopped) at the lights.
- 11. Did they (swim swam swims) on Saturday?
  - ► Yes, they (did don't didn!)
- 12. My mom (bought s buying boxs) me a new T-shirt last week
- 13. She didn't (got up gets up get up) early yesterday.
- 14. (Are Do Did) archeologists find any artifacts last year?
- 15. Al Ahly didn't (played plays play) well last night
- 16. Many people (come came comes) to my wedding two days ago
- 17. Did he (go goes went) to the park ast weekend?
- 18. My friends (doesn't finish aren't finish a.dn't finish) their homeways

```
Ahmed (help - helps - helped) you bake the cake yesterday?
when did she (slept - sleeps - sleep) last night?
Was - Were - Did) she buy a new dress?
Was - Were - Did) you at home last night?
Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
culptures - The - were - styles - the - in - all - same.
metal - found - a lot - sculptures - Archeologists - of.
, is still - Nok's - mystery - today - culture.
Me-learn - can - from their - about cultures - art.
was - There - discovery - Nigeria - a surprising.
vobjects - Who - these - discovered - great?
Im-interested - not - civilization - the Nok - in.
  .....
My-like - sister - didn't - sculptures - the.
  ......
Multure - The - was - Nok - advanced.
Witten - There - isn't - information - Nok - about the.
```

4444	J 4			
3	D		Driver	sentences:
	Punctuate	the	TOHOWING	

- 1. there was a discovery in the small village of nok in nigeria, a country west africa
- 2. can you help me please
- 3. yes she did
  - •
- 4. we didn t enjoy our vacation
- 5. when did hatem have his lunch
- 6. my parents weren t at the party yesterday

# 8 Write an email of (\* 0) words to your friend Haitham:

Tell him what you and your family did last week. Your email address is fayez Tyahoo.com. And your friend's email is haitham@gma\_com

The state of the s	
From :	
То :	
Subject	
	*** 4*********************
	),,, ,,
	** ** *********************************

172



(A - HARI		-ing cold	<sub>اللا</sub> دخا ـ صفیع - برد قارس
boring day		freezing cold	77 711
long walks	تمشية لمسافات طوبيه	possible	V. Sar
dangerous	خطير	good news	الناا ختو
lost	تائه (ضُلُ طريقه)	sad	مين
mysterious	غامض	strange noises	مى ئە ر <sup>. پۇم</sup> ۇ
Prepositions			-
by day	نهارًا - في النهار	on the horizon	ور، الأمْق
by night	لىلاً فب الليل	go for a walk	वम्णुण्या पर्द्या
move up and do	تنحرك صاعدة وهابطة <b>مس</b>	for the first tin	رُوں مرة عود
goen	يستمر - ئـۋاصل		ئىرق
Other words			
Gobi Desert	صدراء جوبي (في الصين)	light of a candl	مو، شمعة ع
Noah Oasis	واحة نوح	each step	) کی حصوة
port	ميناء	waves	51.25
tolescope	تلسكوب - مِنْظَار	voices	ناصاً
local people	سكان محليون	drums	طور
captain	مبطان	mysterious	ממט

# Conjugation of warm



# Regular verbs

# أفعال منتظمة

Pin	sent	Par
roll	ىدور - تتدحرج	rolled
sway	بيارجج - بترنح	swayed
cross	يغبر	crossed
wander	يثجؤل	wandered
boil	يغلب	boiled
look like	مَنشِنِ	looked like
,	200 hay	

173.4	Series 1	- H
last		, un
	tod 21 - Nimin	lasted
seem	gari	seemed
explore		
	رفشكتسي	explored
describe	עמט	described
move		
	يتحرك	moved
imagine	سحبل - بنصور	imagined
	,	,

## Irregular verbs

44		**	-	-	
نتظمة	یر ۵	ل غا	L	20	

Present		Pan
know	يعرف	knew
freeze	يتجمد	froze
say	يقول	said
يضل الطريق lose	یتوه -	lost
leave	يغادر	left

Prevent		talt
see	ար	saw
come up	الشرق	came up
feel	يشعر	felt
spend (time) (وقت) يقضي		spent
write	یکتب	wrote

## Definitions S B Students

wandered	· walked about without a direction	
wasteland	: a landscape where nothing lives	
legend	: a very old and famous story	
fascinated by	: very interested in	
swaying	: moving from side to side	
caravan	: a group of camels and people traveling together	

Connect 6-

12	12 11 11	17	
20,2	3		/3/

· /@s/			
: huge	فخم	measure (v)	Ontion
fridge	a Mi	treasure	Jis
age	On tur	usually	Ċ
joke	arsi	leisure	5171 11/13
dangerous		Asia	troil
language	الهق	television	يرمريون - يلماز
bridge	کوہری	pleasure	سرور - نهخه
village	مرية		
damaged (Adj)	اللف		
Jerry	(اسم) جیرب (اسم		
Just	ا ممط - للتو		
arranged (v)	) مُرتُب - مُنشق		
luggage	أمنعة السفر		
Japan	اليابان		
	1		

### The lesson notes

There was good nows.

ا كانت هناك أخبارًا جيدة.

ر أن كامه "**news**" فننهية تحرف **"\$"** ومصاها باللايه المدالي "أ<mark>خبار" به المساورة من الله المدالية المدالية المدالية المدالية ومصاها بالله المدالية ومصاها بالمدالية ومصاها بالمدالية ومصاها الله ومدالية ومصاها الله ومدالية ومصاها الله ومدالية ومصاها الله ومدالية ومصاها الله ومصاها ا</mark>

That happy news is very good to hear.

0 وزيان داعه "**information"** معينها باللغة الغربية "**فعلومات". بربي أنه الخربية "معلومات". بربي أنه الخربية الإنجلارية مفردة، ولعامل معاملة لمن النبي الربية الإنجلارية مفردة، ولعامل معاملة لمن النبي الربية الإنجلارية مفردة، ولعامل معاملة لمن النبية المن النبية ا** 

This information is useful. I need it to do my homework.

176

Step Ahead

Fris Penner Hardway

(Lucie 3

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind



made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea' in their language.

The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers no people, no plants, no water.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold - sometimes there was snow. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

Connect 6 -

#### عاركو بولو يعبر الصحراء

ماركو بولو في الحادية والعشرين من عمره عندما ذهب بن محراء جوبي لأول مرة علم 1275م. كان مفتونًا بالكثبان برملية التي كانت تتحرك مع كل خطوة تخطوها الجمال.

ي عم تنجير ناستمرار شحرك وتتحرير بدهل بار در در

الملق السكان المطبول على صدار دورس المدمن من المحلول على صدير من المحلول على صدير الملاق المدمن المدمن المحلول على المحلول على

على معاليهم "لون نور"، تأكد ماركو من أن لديهم ما يكفت من البيعام، والداء غربان علاقة على المعالفة المرافقة على المعالفة المرافقة على المعالفة المرافقة على الأمق. لم يكن مد سبب المحادة على الأمق المحراوية عداد علا المحادة على منافقة الكن مغامرتهم المحراوية عدادها المحادة على المحادة عداد على المحادة الحيوانيات منهكة الكن مغامرتهم المحراوية عدادها المحادة الحيادة الحيادة الحيادة المحادة الكن مغامرتها المحراوية عدادها المحادة الحيادة الحيادة الحيادة الحيادة الحيادة الكن مغامرتها المحراوية عدادها المحادة الحيادة الح







# The mysterious island

Day 1, January 17th

Today was a long, boring, day with terrible weather **0**. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island **2** wasn't possible **5**. I can see the island through my telescope **0**.

many palm trees of and there are green mountains at its land center of its land center of its land center of its land center of land there are green mountains at its land center of its land center of land there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds . I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day . In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle in in my small cabin. Today the sky is a bit clearer there is some hope for my journey, perhaps - but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

#### Day 3, January 21st

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin to last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up to l'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!

- 😉 ممکن
- وسط أرضها
- 🤨 لتمضية الوقت خلال النهار 🕛
  - 🕩 تَشَرق

- وَزِيرِهُ غَامِضَةً 🛭
- 😉 أشجار النخيل
- (مُديدة) (شديدة) 🔞
  - പ്പാർമ്മാന് 🛈
- 🛈 طمّس سيُمُّ للغايقِ
- من خلال تلیسکوبی
  - تتخيّل 🕡
  - 🛈 على ضوء شمعة

### Exercises on Lesson 5

1) Read and match "A" with "B":

SAME OF THE PARTY	'B*
1. fascinated by	a) moving from side to side
caravan	<b>b)</b> a very old and famous story
3. swaying	c) very interested in
. wasteland	d) walked about without a direction
5. wandered	e) a group of camels and people traveling together
6. legend	f) a landscape where nothing lives

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

caravan - water - dromedaries - desert - swaying

3 Write the following words in the correct column:

huge - measure - fridge - treasure - television -Asia - usually - dangerous - joke - age

/ds/ /3/

180

Step Ahea



# Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Marco Polo was twenty one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was faccinated by the sand dunes which moved with each step the camelo made. Some of the duries were sizty meters tall and twenty meters long and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Cubi Decent the dry sea' in their language

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The underlined word "fascinated" means (bored tired amazed).
- 2. Some of the dunes were (sixty forty twenty) meters long.
- Answer these questions:
  - 3. How old was Marco Polo when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time?
  - 4. What did the local people call the Gobi Desert?
- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
  - 1. was Marco great a traveler Polo.
  - 2. by Marco Polo fascinated the sand dunes was.
  - 3. It mysterious is a place and dangerous.
  - 4. dromedaries What the were like?

Connect 6 -

Lii. 5

5. leave - The - didn't - port - the - ship.

6. was - I - and down - sad - day - yesterday - all.

7. friends - breakfast - had - my - with - l.

5

8. explore - I - can - the - island - mysterious!

-

- 6 Punctuate the following sentences:
  - 1. which egyptian anima does that animal look like

•

2. i visit my grandparents every friday

**▶** ••

3. yes she played football yesterday

4. ahmed zaki was a famous actor

5. we love to read about marco polo

**...** 

6. my father didn t let me go out

# Lessons (4(5) Writing & Project

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





go on a felucca ىركى على متن فلوكة



on the River Nile رفىي نهر النيل



sailing boat قارب شراعب



sail (n)(v)شِراع - يُبچِر



the Great Pyramid الهرم الأكبر



warm sunshine أشعة الشمس الدافئة



skills مهارات

#### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

#### Adjectives

lovely way magical relaxing quiet peaceful

**WELLY** 

amazing experience طريقة جميلة awesome ancient august

مُدهش - مُذهل - رائع قديم جدًا

incredible هادیا

لا تُصَدُّق - مدهشة

ْ مُسَالِم - هادئ wonderful

رائع

تحرية مدهشه

#### Other words

traditional Egyptian music moved gently موسيقت مصرية تراثية along the way من الصعب أن تبحر difficult to sail

كانت تتحرك بهدوء

على طول الطريق

على متن الفلوكة on board the felucca حياة

What a day!

الله من يوم! made of

معنوع من

Connect 6

life

18 11

A there has features that are different from other types of text.

O It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on

a single day.

O It is usually written in an informal style and uses first person product.

(I, we, my, etc.)

O It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.

O It usually describes the white s describes

الأنواع الأحرب على معزات تختاف على الأنواع الأحرب من السوس على فقرات قصيرة، كلّ منها تتحدث عما حدث في يوم واحد. وفي ما يكون مكتوبة بأسلوب غير رسمي وتُسْتَخَدِم ضمائر المنكلـم للسهر الإلح)،

ر عيدة ما يصف أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه. رعيدة ما يصف الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

#### 6 January

Today, I had an amazing experience ... I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the r ver in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful - a lovely way to travel.

We stopped to see some incredible things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome! The pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of good. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful.





me afternoon, we had a deliver.

in the state of th todal experienced magical and relaxing. What a day! I had

المد يطيبُ بيدرية رائعة اليوم .. لمد ركيبُ ماوكة في يهر النيل! الملوكة في قارب ر ممرم بالمداري وهما مطبوعة من الديناب.



أدعما كينم. إن الإنجار بالملوكة صعب،

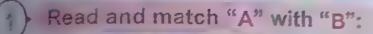
، مرب النهر لجن أشعة السمس



نَرِمُسَا لَرَوْيَهُ يَعِضُ الأَسْيَاءُ ﴿ مِنْ مِلْمُ الطَّرِيقُ أَيضًا. رأبِتُ أهرامَانَ الديرة لأول مرة مي حياس - سد دين بر . . . الأهرامات محمة وكال لون الحجارة دهبي. يبلغ ارتفاع الهرم الأكبر، أطول الأشرامات الثلاثة، 147 منزاً. لقد كان رائعًا

و این در علی عرب کال در موسیکی د میل وی ... cally and ister to the sit

# European on



- went on a felucca
- 2 The trip
- 3. The soat had two
- 4. A fetucca is a
- 5. saw the Pyramids

- a) traditional Egyptian sailing boat.
- b) of Giza for the first time in my life.

B

- c) was amazing.
- a) on the River Nile!
- e) white sails.
- f) difficult to sail.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Today I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood, A Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. A felucca is tall, serious man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the golden surphing trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the golden surphing. We stopped to see some incredible things along the way too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life - they were awesome. The pyramids were huge and the stone's were a sort of golden color.

Choose	the	COI	rect	ans	wer:

- 1. A felucca is made of (metal wood plastic).
- 2. The opposite of the underlined word "difficult" is (hard wrong early

### Answer these questions:

- 3. Who was the captain of the felucca?
- 4. How were the pyramids?

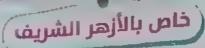
## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. went on I on the a felucca River Nile!
- 2. made felucca A isn't metal of.
- 3. of the Karim the was captain boat.
- If follows A is to soil difficult
- 4. felucca A is to sail difficult.
- 5. two boat white had sails The.

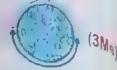
6. the felucca - We - lunch - board - had - on
7. a - had - I - experience - wonderful - sucht
8. trip - Did - enjoy - you - the?
Punctuate the following sentences:
1, i saw the pyramids of giza
*** ***********************************
2, no he didn't come with us
3. noha amira and rania's birthdays are in december
4. what do you want to eat
• What do you want to eat
5. welcome to egypt
5, Welcomo to ogypt
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:  Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address in
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:  Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address in
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:  Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address is Sara@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is Ramy@gmail.com.  From :
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:  Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address is Sara@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is Ramy@gmail.com.  From :
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:  Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address is Sara@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is Ramy@gmail.com.  From :
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:  Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address is Sara@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is Ramy@gmail.com.  From :
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:  Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address is Sara@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is Ramy@gmail.com.  From :
Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:  Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address is Sara@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is Ramy@gmail.com.  From :

Canthanne y was say

# Test 9 on Unit 5







1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

#### نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

- 1. A felucia is made of iglass wood metal)
- 2. A felucca is a (new modern traditional) sailing boat.
- 3. I went on a feluce i on the (Red Sea River Nile Lake Nasser)
- Read and sumplifie the dialogue with the words in the box:(3Mg)

#### count century - explorer .. voyage

Hosam: Who was Marco Polo?

Ayman: He was an Italian . . . He visited China

hundreds years ago.

Hosam: When did he go there?

Ayman: He went there in the 13th .....

Hosam: How did he go there?

Ayman: He went on a long ...... by sea.

Hosam: What did he do next?

Ayman: He rode a . . ... all the way to China.

#### 3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 1. I (go went am going) to the Zoo yesterday.
- 2. When someone finds something that people didn't know about, it's alan (discovery invention inspiration).
- 3. She (was -wasn't -were) at school yesterday. Yesterday was a noliday
- 4. Mustafa went on a trip down the Nile on a (car felucca taxi).

### Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Last week, Samar and her friends went on a school trip to Cairo and Giza by bus. In the early morning, her father took her to school where she caught the bus. They reached Cairo at nine o clock. First, they visited the

188

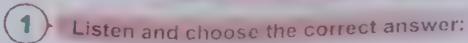
Step Ahead

museum, where they enjoyed seeing many statues. Then, they visited the zoo and saw different animals. They had lunch there and took many pictures. After that, they visited the Pyramids. They came back home at Choose the correct answer: 1. They went to Cairo and G za by (car - train - bus). 2. The opposite of the underlined word "early" is (late - quickly - slowly). Answer these questions: 3. How long did the trip take? 4. What did the students see in the zoo? Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 1, last year - treasure - found - The travelers, 2 animals - see - types of - you - What - can? 3. people - Local - objects - found - some. Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)no i don't want to go to the club on monday Write an email to your English friend Jack: (5Ms) Tell him about the great discoveries the archaeologists make in your country from time to time. Tell him about the monuments and treasures they find, and where they put them. Your email address is ali@vahoo.com. And your friend's email address is jack@hotmail.com. -From To Subject : ..... 189 Connect 6-

Sis.

## Test 10 on Unit 5

end Mounts ap polytes to





2. He visited (Ec.pt tely (! havin the 13' century.

3. He wrote a (story - fear - h - ) about his experience

## 2 Listen and complete the sentences:

1. The local people found some unusual ... under the ground

2. These objects we e heautiful clay sculptures of

3. The were all in the same style.

#### (3) Choose the correct answer:

(4M,

1. A team of (teachers - doctors - traders - archaeologists) found many sculptures around Nok.

2. I (study - studied - am studying - studies) math and science yesterday

3. The dromedaties in the (carnival - caravan - party - river) moved slow, up and down the dunes.

4. He didn't (corne - comes - coming - came) to school last week.

#### Read and match "A" with "B":

(5Ms

1. Where was your last vacation?

In the desert, it's warm in the sun

3. He went into

4. How does the writer feel on his first day?

5. A team of archaeologists found

a) the Gobi Desert in 1275.

b) strong winds.

c) many sculptures in that area.

B

d) but cool in the shade.

e) He is bored.

f) I went to Hurghada with my family.

190

- Step Ahead

Read the text and answer the questions: Have you ever read any stories about traveling in the old days? In the old days, people traveled on foot or horseback. Nowadays, they travel by air. It's the quickest way to travel. They also travel by sea or by land in trains or cars. People travel for different reasons. Some people go on business. And some travel for their health Others travel for pleasure. They want to see other places, visit famous towns or cities and buy souvenirs from different countries. Some students travel to complete their studies. This gives them the chance to have better jobs. Choose the correct answer: 1. Traveling by land means traveling by (trains - planes - ships - boats). 2. Students travel to complete their (jobs - tests - studies - lessons). Answer these questions: 3. What's the quickest way to travel? 4. How did people travel in the past? Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 1. The museum - had - objects - a lot of - from China - ancient. 2. you - help - Can - me, - please? 3. experience - an amazing - had - The scientists. Punctuate the following sentence: are dina and yasmin good at planting trees Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

(1M)

(3Ms)

(GIA:.)

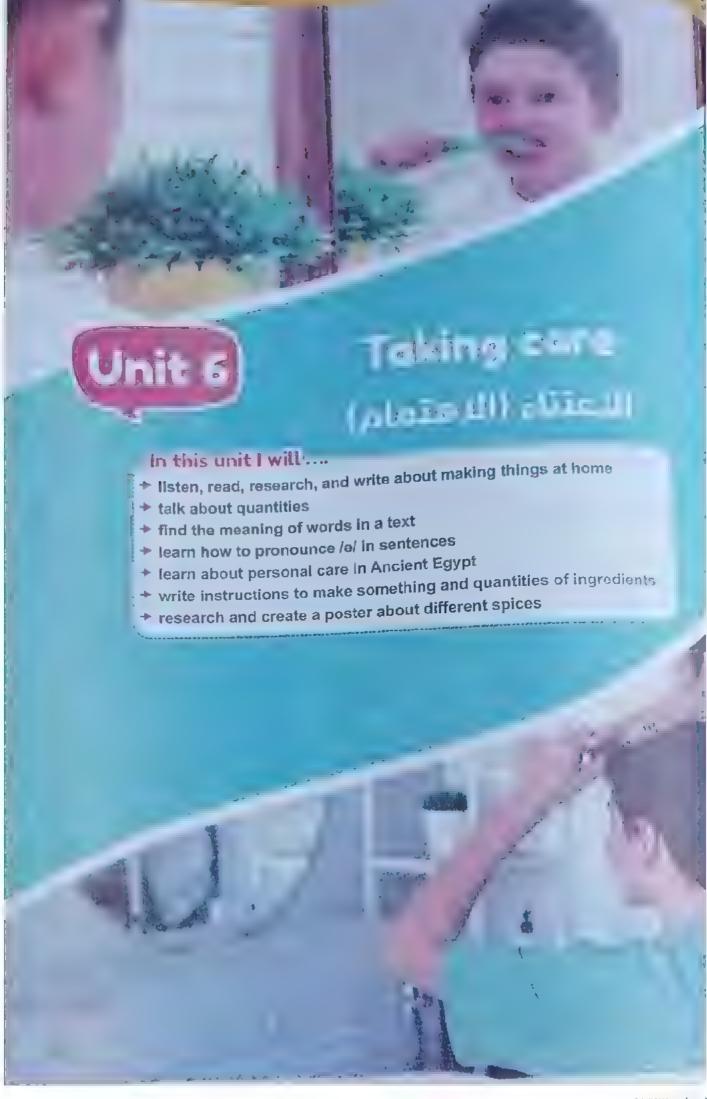
"Deserts"

#### ▶ ideas to help you:

desert - hard life - little rain - little water - hot weather - sand dunes animals - people - tents



Connect 6





# أفعال منتظمة معرفة أفعال منتظمة

## Regular verbs

_		Section 1
listen	يستمع	listened
need	يحتاح	needed
smell	بشم	smelled
press	תיאק	pressed
heat	يُشدِّن	heated

100		The state of the s
discuss	یناقش	discussed
melt	ينصهر - يَصْهُر	melted
use	بستخدم	used
squeeze	بعصر	squeezed
stir	بِأُمْ <u>ي</u> ْ	stirred

#### Irregular verbs

	ы	-	ø	*	**	-	-	_	-	_						z
č	u	۵	ŀ	ذ	ï	i	C	>	J.	Ų	Ė	c	JI	Q	۵	

	The state of the s	Past
do	يفعل	did
read	يقرأ	read
make	يصنع	made
say	يقول	said

	MAN ALL	
hold	يحمل - يمسك	hed
see	یری	saw
think	تعيود	thought
find	تخر عخت	found

When you listen for quantities, remember to listen/look for numbers and words about measurements. For example, kilograms, grams, liters, milliliters, spoons, packages, cans.

دما تستمع إلى الكميات، تذكّر أن تستمع / تبحث عن أرقام وكلمان عن القياسات. سبيل المثال، كيلـو جرامـات، جرامـات، لتـرات، مليلتـرات، ملاعـق، عبـوان، علـب.

# Contract the same from Albert Street, Street,



Mom: Hi, Laila. I love making things. Why don't we make something new?

Laila: That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?

Mom: I have some perfume oil. We can use it to make candles.

Mom: Here are the instructions. Can you read them out to me?

Laila: Right. First, we need some wax.

Mom: Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

Laila: It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."

Mom: Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?

Laila: We need some perfume oil.

Mom: Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil. Mmm... they smell lovely. How much do we need?

Laila: The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil."

Mom: Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and press them on the tops of the candles.

Laila: Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one wick - that's the little cotton rope inside the candle.

Mom: Oh, yes. And we need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

Laila: So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right? Now, what do we need to do first?

Mom: Let's see... "Step one: Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well."

- مرحبًا يا ليلى. أنا أُحِبُ صُبع الأشياء، لمَ لا نصنع شيئًا جديدًا؟
- ليلى : هذه فكرة زائعة. هل لديكِ شيء معين في بالك؟
- إِلَّم : لَدَيِّ بَعْضُ مِنْ زَنْتُ الْعُطُورِ. بِمَكِنِنَا اسْتَخْدَامُهُ لَضُنَّعُ الشَّمُوعُ.
  - الشموع؟ واوا لفد أحببت المكرة؛
  - الأم : ها هي الإرشادات، هل يمكنك قراءتها لي؟
    - الشمع. ﴿ حَسَنًا. أُولًا، نحتاج إلَى بعض الشمع.
- ان المصرية. إنه شمع نخيل من أشجار النخيل المصرية. إنه يصنع شموعًا جمبلة
  - الله عند الأرشادات، "استخدم 450 جرامًا من الشمع لِصُبع ثلاث شمعات".
    - بلأم : حسنًا، يوجد حوالي 500 جرام هنا. هذا كافٍ، ماذا بعد ذلك؟
      - الله : نحتاج إلى بعض من زيت العطور.
- الأم : ها هو. هذه زجاجات صغيرة من زيت الليمون. أمممم ... رائحتها جميلة، كم ندتاج منها؟
  - ﴾ لـــــ : نقول الإرشادات، "أضف حوالي 40 نقطة من الزيت."
  - الام : حسنًا. ويمكننا أن نأخد حوالي 15 زهرة ونضغطها فوق الشموع.
- للله : نعم، هذه فكرة جيدة. بعدها سنحناج إلى كوب زجاجيّ لكل شمعة وفتيل -والفتيل هو الحبل القطيب الصغير الذي يوجد داخل الشمعة.
- الأم : أوه، نعم، ونحتاج إلى بعض أعواد المثلجات لتثبيت الفتائل في أعلى الأكواب.
- لللم : إذن ما نحتاجه هو ثلاثة أكواب وثلاث فبائل ونلائه أعواد مثلجات، أليس كذلك؟ الآن، ماذا علينا أن نفعل أولًا؟
  - الام : لنرم ... "الخطوة الأولى: سذَّن الشمع لِتُذِيبِه، ثم قلَّبِه جيدًا."

# Exercises on Lesson

## Read and match "A" with "B":

- What do Leila and her mom make? a) 450 grams of wax.
- 2. Here is the palm wax.
- 3. How much wax do we need?
- I have little bottles of perfume oil
- 5. What do we need to do first?
- b) I think you need perfume.
- c) Step one: Heat the wax to melt it.
- d) It makes really nice candles.
- e) They smell lovely.
- f) They make the candles.

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

# palm trees – instructions – press – grams – wax

- Mom : Laila, here are the 1 . for making the candles.
- Laila: Right. First, we need some 2
- Mom : Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian 3 . lt makes really nice candles. How much do we need?
- Laila: It says, "Use 450 (4) ..... of wax to make three candles."
- Mom: Okay, there's about 500 grams here. What's next?
- Laila: The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of perfume oil."

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. We sometimes use the light of (sun candles oil) at night when it's dark.
- 2. (Perfume Cooking Water) oils usually smell nice.
- 3. I'm happy when I feel (clouds ropes drops) of rain falling on my head.
- 4. Candles are made of (cotton sticks wax).
- 5. (Palm Flower Bottle) trees give us dates.
- 6. The (wick wax stick) is the little cotton rope inside the candle.

## 1 Jun 6

- 7. Popsicle (sticks ropes trees) are usually thin and long.
- 8. I wash my hands with water and (oil soap soup) before having meals.

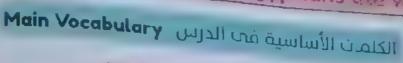
## Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. oils Perfume lovely smell.
- 2. I two have lemon bottles of oil.
- 3. need We one each candle glass for.
  - >
- 4. the Heat wax to it meit.
- 5. don't 1 like candles making.
- 6. do need to we candles make What?
- 5 Punctuate the following sentences:
  - 1. what do laila and her mom make
    - **>**
  - 2. ahmed is such a clever student
  - 3. do you like pizza
  - 4. no my mom can t drive cars
- 5. it s very cold in january
  - **>**
- 6. yes but you don t need wax



# Lesson 2 Ancient Egyptians ate viell













paintings رسومات festival مهرجان - احتفال

باشدأ

preserve (v)

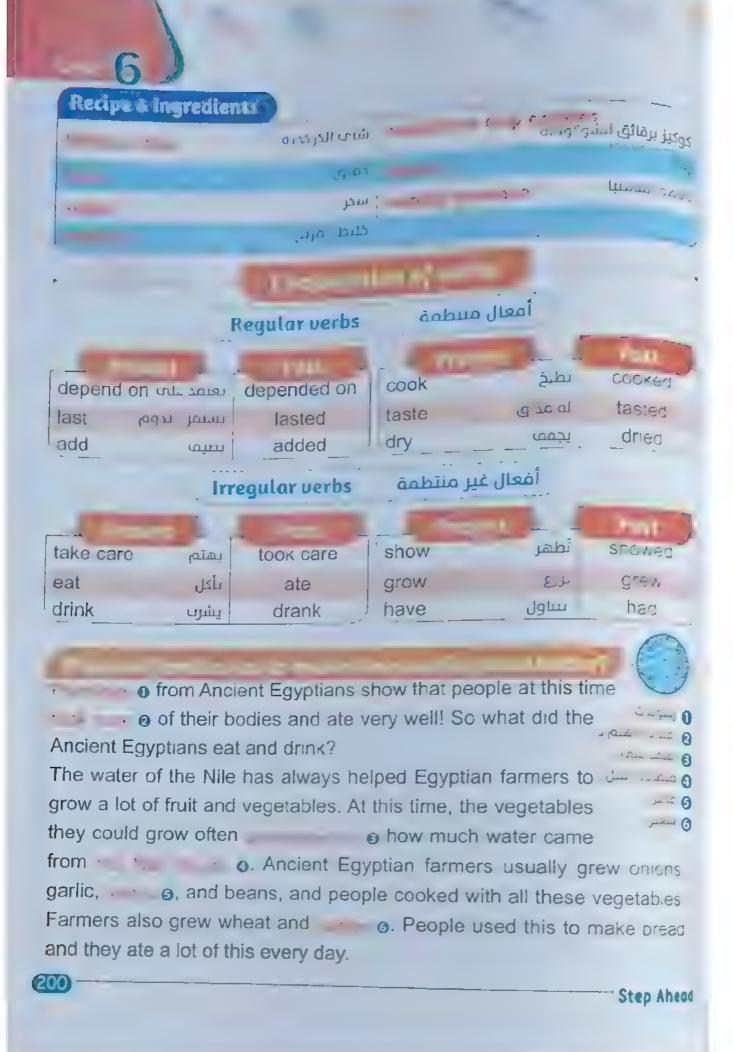
#### Extra Vocabulary

#### كلمات إمامية

faid and ar	inrs
barley	

barley	شعير	lentils was
vegetables	اً حُضراوات	meat pas
onions	, אם ל	fish
garlic	أثوم	ducks by
beans	فول - حبوب - فاهولیا	<b>geese</b> jgi
wheat	قمح	دجاج
bread	خبز	honey Juic
eggs	بيض	cream ābŵā
cheese	چُبن - جبثة	بلح - تمر
spices	توابل	cakes ਵਿਕਤ - ਵੀਤ
salt	ملح	figs ບຸກັ
taste better	مذامه أمضل	sweet fruit drinks مشروبات فواکه مسکرة

Connect 6-



Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at chickens. They probably atea few fish and birds likeducks, geese, and there were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! People often used honey with bread and cream to some families also knew how to use spices to and baths of the result of the line.

some families also knew how to use spices to make sweet fruit drinks. cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve to food. For fruit and vegetables for the winter.

# GRAMMAR TUDY

Nouns are divided into countable nouns and uncountable nouns.

■ تنقسم الأسماء إلى أسماء تُعد (تجمع) وأسماء لا تعد (لا تجمع).

Most nouns are countable and have a singular and plural form.

مُعظم الأسماء تُعد، ولها صِيغَة مُفْرَد وَصِيغَة جَمْع.

. 3	girls	story	<b>→</b>	stories	loaf		loaves
glass>	glasses	mango	<u>}</u> ,	mangoes	brush	· mary	brushes
watch ->	watches	man	$\rightarrow$		mouse		

▶ l ate a mango.

My brother ate two mangoes-

There are other nouns which are uncountable. They do not have a plural form.

بعض الأسماء لا تُعد، وهي التي ليس لها صِيغَة جمع وتُعَامَل معاملة المفرد مثل:
 أسماء مأكولات ومَشْرُوبَات:

cheese - bread - butter - rice - milk - water - orange juice - apple - juice - meat - sugar - salt - tea - oil - coffee - mint ....

🔿 أسماء أخرى:

time - money - news - information - homework - traffic - help - weight - paint - furniture ......

Connect 6

Later Col Is there any butter in the bowl? ► There's a little money in my mom's bag. I This news is important الدما الله أن تُستَخْدَم كأسماء تُعد وأسماء لا تُعد. (fish - food - ice cream - time - oil - juice .....) I like making ice cream with my mom. She bought two ice creams an hour ago. Especialisms of guentilles العديد من - الكثير "للعدد" كثير من "للكمبن" a lot of much الكثير من some - any a little قليل "للكمية" بعض - أي نُسْتَخْذَم قبل الأسماء التي 🗤 والتي لا تعد 🕒 🖜 a lot of There's a lot of milk in the bottle. I have a lot of friends. رَتُسْتَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي 🕠 والتي لا تعد 🕒 🔻 some (نسخدم عي الحمل المثنيّة) There's some bread in the basket. There are some students in the laboratory. (المنافذة الجمل المنبئة) ثُسْتَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي نعد والتي لا تعد anu الملفية والاستفهامية)?Is there any water in the glass الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية) 🖿 There aren't any eggs in the fridge. (سمحدر في الجمل المنعبة والاستفهامية) 🔿 تُسْتَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي 🖅 فقط many 🧳 There aren't many eggs in the fridge. We can't have eggs for dinner. 🖰 تُسْتَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي 🕏 🙉 فقط much ▶ There isn't much oil in the bottle. a few 🔿 تُسْتَخُدَم قبل الأسماء التي تعد فقط → Step Ahead ➤ There are a few stores in this street. a little /



🔿 تُسْتَخُدَم قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد فقط

▶ There's a little sugar in her tea

الله عاملة (any some) (ما مع الأسماء التي تعد نعاملهما معاملة الحمع، وإ. السنط ما مع الأسماء ا**لتي لا تعد نعاملهما معاملة المفرد**. بوحد (للمقرد) There is



#### بوجد (الحمع) There are

- ▶ There is some milk in this bottle.
- ▶ There are some tomatoes in the bag
- ➤ There isn't, any sait in this food. She forgot to put some.
- ➤ There aren't any oranges in the market. I can't see any.

# How many - How much

#### How many

کم عدد

- We use "How many" ...? to tak ubout quantities of countable things, like leaves, lemons, cars or people. We can reply to the question with a number (a / an / one, five, twenty), or an approximate amount (some, a few, a lot of).
  - النسأل عن عدد "اسم بُعد"، ودائمًا الاسم الذي يليها يكون جمعًا، (How many) لنسأل عن عدد "اسم بُعد"، ويمكن أن نجيب على هذا السؤال باستخدام عدد (... a / an / one, five, twenty ...) أو باستخدام أحد تعبيرات الكمية التقريبية (... some / a few / a lot of ...)
- How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?
  - ➤ We need five lemons.
- ► We need a few lemons.

#### How much

ر ما كمية

■ Weuse How much...? to ask about quantities of uncountable things, like tea, sugar, oil or grass. We can only reply to this question with an approximate amount (some, a little, a lot of).

Connect 6-

استخدم (How much) لنسأل عن كميه "اسم لا نمد"، ودايما الاسم الذي بليها يكون اسم مفرد لا بُعد، ويمكن أن نحيب على هذا السوال باستخدام احد تعييرات الكمية المريبية (... المري

How much oil do we need?

▶ We need a little oil.

#### Remember

we can also talk about quantities of both countable and uncountable things using measurements.

و الرب يمكننا التحدث عن كميات الأسماء الني بُعد والتي لا بُعد باستخدام أدوات القياس،

- ► We need 400 grams of chicken.
- ➤ Please buy of milk

## Exercises on Lesson 2



Read and complete the text with the words in the box;

#### grew - floods - Nile - depended

The water of the ... has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often 2 on how much water came from the Nile 2 . Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew different vegetables, fruit and grains.

2 Read and match "." with ": ":

1. There is some

Are there any

3. There are some

Is there any

- a) oranges on the table.
- b) cheese on the plate?
- c) dates on the palm tree?
- d) juice in the packet.

204

Step Ahea

Read and match " "with " ":

1. There is a little

2. Are there many
3. There are a few

3. There are a few

4. Is there much

4. Is there much

4. Read and complete the mini-dialogues with the words in the box:

How many How much

1. Hani

5. milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?

Grandma: Just a little milk, thanks Hani.

2. Fareeda: students are there in your English class, Dalia? : There are about forty, I think. Dalia 3. Sherif math problems did you do yesterday? Kareem : Just a few. They were difficult. : I'm going to the market now. 4. Rana tomatoes do we need? : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit. Mom : ..... water is there in the river today? 5. Ahmed : A lot! It rained all day yesterday. Ali

#### 5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. (How many How much) lemons do we need for the lemonade?
- 2. We need (a few a little) apples to make the pie.
- 3. (How many How much) oil do we need? We need (a few a little) oil.
- 4. (How many How much) chairs are there in the room?
- 5. There is (a lot of a little) juice left. We can all drink 2 rounds.
- 6. She needs (a few a little) help.
- 7. (How many How much) movies did you see this year?
- 8. They're having (a lot of a few) fun.
- 9. (How many How much) mint do you put in your tea?
- 10. (How many How much) butter do you need for the rec. se?

205

ومسوحة صوب بر ١٩٥٤ ١٨٥٠

## 6.

- 11. Give me (a few a little) more grapes.
- 12. I've lost (a few a little) weight.
- 13. I'll be back in (a few a little) minutes
- 14. (How many How much) languages can you speak?
- 15. (How many How much) paint do you need to cover the walls?
- 16. There were (a few a little) birds there.
- 17. Please hurry. We don't have (a lot of a few) time.
- 18. Can I have (a few a little) sugar in my coffee, please?
- 19. There isn't (some any) bread. Can you buy (some a few)?
- 20. I don't have (a lot of a few) money for Mom's present.
- 21. (How many How much) candles does 450 grams of wax make?
- 22. Do we have (some any) ice cream? I'd really like (some any).
- 23. (How many How much) brothers and sisters do you have?
- 24. There are (some any) girls from Luxor in my class.
- 25. There aren't (some any) tigers in Egypt.
- 26. Are there (some any) lemons?
- 27. (There is There are) a lot of books on the shelf.
- 28. (There is There are) a lot of sugar in my cup.
- 29. (There is There are) a little butter in this recipe.
- 30. (There is There are) a few desks in my class.
- 31. (How many How much) orange juice do you need?
- 32. (How many How much) oranges do you need?
- 33. There's some (lemons grapes rice) in the bag.
- 34. There are some (butter potatoes bread) over there.
- 35. Is there any (tomatoes eggs butter) in the pan?
- 36. Are there any (carrots salt oil) in the salad?
- 37. There (am is are) some cheese in the fridge.
- 36. There (am is are) some lemons in the tree.
- 39. (Am Is Are) there any honey in the jar?
- 40. (Am Is Are) there any jars of honey in the cupboard?

## 6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. took care of - Egyptians - Ancient - bodies - their.

206

Step Ahead

2. did eat - Egyptians - Ancient - the?	Contract Contract
3. in Ancient - Egypt - meat -	7
4. Ancient Egypt - in - a lot of - were - bees	
5. of milk bottles - are there - many?	
6. preserve food - knew - to - how.	?
7. oil - much - do - need - How - we?	
Punctuate the following sentences:	?
1. my cousin doesn't like ice cream	
2. how many cups of coffee does ramy drink	
3. the water of the nile always helped the ancient egypt	lans
4. how much money do we need adel	
5. yes samira plays tennis every thursday	
Write an email of (50) words to your friend	Noha:
Tell her about a meal you helped your mom preparing. Tell you used and how you made it. Your email address is ranayour friend's email address is noha@gmail.com.	her what ingredients

Connect 6

. Lau 6.





Main Vocabulary الأساسية فب الدرس







palace



رناج

scepter ضوْلَجَان throne

العرش العرش العرش



queen



king طلاع



prince أمير



princess ăjus



مىكم (حاص بالعائلات الملكنة)



lean ریمیل-یستند-ینحنی



dust (n)



astonished (adj) مندهش

#### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

رتراب

statues	furniture تماثیل	أثاث (موسلبا)
CHITTEEL CO.	<mark>حوض الاستحمام (carpets</mark>	י יייבור
royal bathroom	curtains حمام ملکس	لىنىدار

208

Step Ahead

THE WALL

at once

Juliana pick up

سمط

put on

than to on the

بطرق عاد النات

Centingentum of urre-

Regular verbs

arthum front

MALLE ALL

1	A DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON OF	
lean	نىحنى - تمنل	leaned
knock	بطرق	knocked
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
pass	بمر	passed
clean	يُنَظِّف	cleaned

Free	1817	Total Inc.
explain	يشرح	explained
pick up	لتقط	picked up
explore	بغشكتسي	explored
notice	يلاحظ	noticed
hurry	يُسْرِع	hurried

Irregular verbs

أمطل عبر منتظمة

					-	46
	3	ø,	-	9 4	n	
	•					•
. B	AB J				==	

	San and and and	
put on	تايدن	put on
come	بأتب	came
go	يذهب	went
hear	تسمع	heard
spend (years)	یقصی (سنوات)	spent

		Final
understand	مهفي	understood
fall	سقط	fell
get out	يخرج	got out
sit	يجلس	sat
, tell	يخبر	told

Connect 6-

# السلـ (6\_)

- 1. Poter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.
- 2. One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the did kings dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children the prince and the princes hand. The queen and the royal children the painting is empty his are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty his is missing!
- 3. Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is saning dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once!
- 4. He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind goors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! Im enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is astonished. When the king comes cut he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the dust off me. Dust damages the painting, so I simply had to have a bath."





- 5. Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says, "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise. they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the parace. Otherwise.
- 6. Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged - and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!
- المعديد المصر مديم ولا أحد عين المعديد المصر مديم ولا أحد عين ودر المنام ودر المن المن المنام المنام ومناوه المنام ودر
- 2. عن مع بالمراب أن غرب الاشو بالموسوسة ، كالموسودة من عرفه الطعام در أي أنسار سين سرية الميون أند الميوك المد من حاليقًا على العرش وعدى رأسة ر ... باعد الأمر وحوره لملكه وأصمال لعائله الملكلة - لأمر ولأعرو ار مار مساعد موصورة موم به مممود!
- عدم عدم عدم الموقة مرة أخراها يمكنه رؤية الناج والطولجان، لكن بعث حبيًا عودودًا أكما أن الصولاد الأميرة، يعلم بينر أنه لنوب عليه إيحاد الملك في الحال!
- المسترقع حميع فُرَف عصر وتنصر وزاء الأبوات والستائر ميها وأخبرًا يصرح حماء الماب؟ النزم الهدوء من الباب؟ النزم الهدوء من عصب الأستمنع لعمام ساخر! ' بيتر مذهول، عندما يخرج الملك من الحمّام يقول له عَدْ أَعْصِتُ سَوَادَ حَالِمًا مِنْ لَنَكَ اللَّوْحَةَ، وَبِمْ يَأْنُ أَحَدَ لَيُنَظِّفُ الْغَبَارِ عَنِي أَبَدًا! لَفَدَ أَتُكُ الغبار اللوحة، لذا كان عليًّا أن أستحم."
- كَ نَتَفَهُم بِيْنَ وَلِكِن بُوَضِّح للملك أن صولجانه على وشك لسقوط على الأميرة! فبقور حــــ سكر ك يائلم، سوف أعود مُسرِعًا. ولكن أرجوك نظم اللوحات الموحودة مى عصر عب المستميل. وإلا سوف تُثْلُف اللوحات للأبد!"، ويركض عائدًا إلى اللوحة للمُسَا الصولجان.
- 6. حجوه سرا أن شطيف حميع اللوحات الموجودة في الفصر حتم لا تَثْلُف وحتم لا نَعْمَر حدٍّ بني حروم من توجيه لنشتجم بشكل جيدا

الله الله

You can use pictures in a story to help you understand new words. You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it. For example, is there an article (a/an/the) before the you understand it. For example, is there an article (a/an/the) before the word, or an adjective? If there is, it's a noun. You can then look at the word, or an adjective? If there is, it's a noun could mean in the context sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context with a sentence around it and think what the noun could mean in the context on the local lateral later

Sureisus on Lettern 3 Fart(t)

#### 1 Read and match "A" with "B":

- 1. Where does Peter live?
- 2. The king is sitting on his throne
- 3. The king runs back to the painting
- 4. The rooms are full of
- 5. What is the palace like?

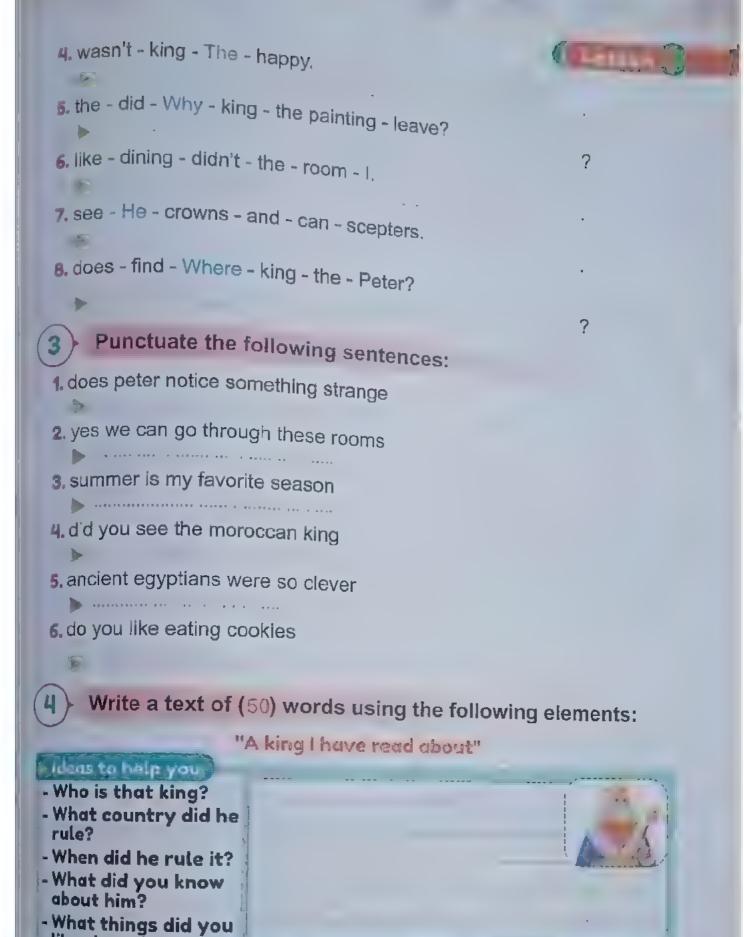
- a) to pick up the scepter.
- ) He lives in a big palace.
- c) It's old and no one lives there now.
- d) with a crown on his head.
- e) the scepter is leaning.
- interesting and precious things

#### 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. king is What the doing?
- 2. palace a lives Peter big in.
- 3. Peter Where live does?

?

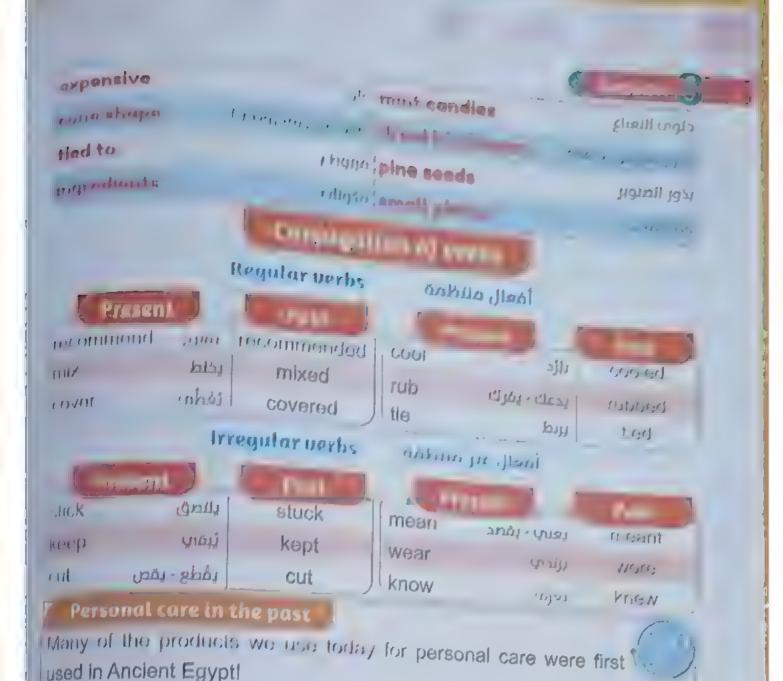
Step Aheod



like about him?

Connect 6-





#### ▶ Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians leved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like resemany and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

Connect 6 -



► Toothpaste

to clean their feeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of feeth to stick with small precess of papyring field to it at one out. The ingress. of their toothparde were a mint rock salt, popper, and dred in a second They put this dry powder directly onto their leath and relace to their toothbrushes.

Breath Mints

To keep their mouths tresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians make make candles. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuttogether with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire in his cool, and cut it into small square candies.

though plant to a long to patter comments of

Harder

could one hand plant like the translip and the conmilitar , la marchinal du control e e e e e e e e and our directions blocked out of a set of the set وبسارات مثل الهبل والفرمة.

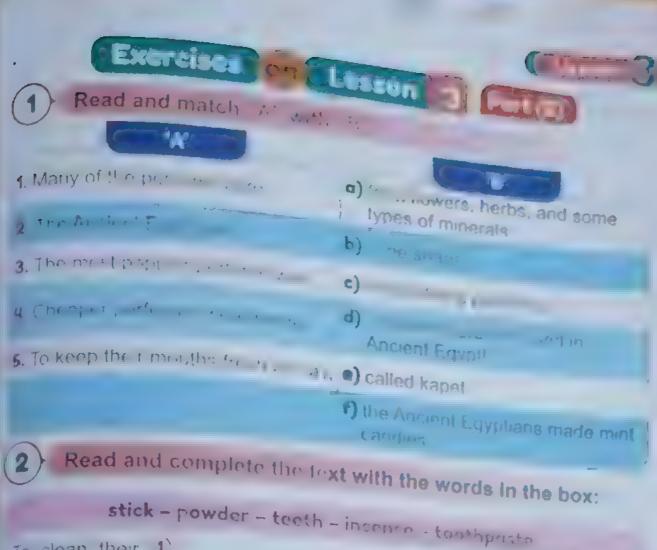
والمراجع والمراجع والسرال والمراجع والمراجع والمراجع والمراجع والمراجع والمراجع والمراجع والمراجع والمراجع , till e stagg or fost stag interest in the Highest and Pydy d dioned group to the never property of the العطور للك على رؤوسهم من الاحتفالات

مقحون الأسيان

In ocalia quant ount programmed as the the second of the theory من ورق البردي مربوطة في أحد طرفيها. وكانت فكؤنات معجون port of the management of the property of the second of th Columbian and a marketing to

النفياع المُعطَر للقم

garalle relations to the same of the same alternative of the comment of the co and the state of the state of the state of



To clean their 1 Are ont E Jap's in a compast toothbrush It's a 2 with small pieces of capyrant at one end. The ingredients of their (3 Aprentity rack and dried iris flowers. They put this dry 4 directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### mixture - mint - cool - heat - seeds

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon pine, and some nuts together with honey. Then they neated the over a fire, left it to and cut it into small square candies.

Connect 6-

- 6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.
  - 11 Amount in war expert a perform a light

    - I had perform therper to e. . tel ferm in
  - 3. Do like you perfumes using?
  - 4 perfumes Egyptians strong loved The Ancient
  - 5 he Ancient made Lgyptams candies, mint -
- Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: "My personal care tools"

soap - shampoo - perfume - hairbrush kirout to help your toothpaste - toothbrush



# Main Vocabulary ساعاا يدف قيساسانا الأساسية في الدرس



#### Salt dough recipe

salt dough model	نموذح عجينة الملح	low temperature	0.000	
ingredients		preparation time	درحه حراره منحمصه <b>ومّت التحضير</b>	
mixture	خلیط - مزیج	hard	ريام	
bowl	سلطانية - وعاء - إناء		عباصر	
baking tray	صينية خَبِرْ	plain flour	रजाक व्यावर्ज	
oven	فرن	method	طرىمە	

#### Extra Vocabulary

#### كلمات إضافية

combination	لذبذة <mark>delicious dishes</mark> مزيج - خليط	أطناق لديدة - أكلات
famous for	to color cloنh فشهور ب	تلوين الملابس
medicine	beautifully packaged حویاء ل جمیل	مُعلَمُة - مُعتَأَةُ نشك
spice stores	flat surface محلات البهارات	اسطح مسئو

Connect 6 ⊢

(219)

### muyaden ed 111

#### Regular verbs

### andina dlanl

				رديل	Monley
heat	113111	heated	work		worked
mix	hLi	mixed	roll flat	.+1	rolled flat
add	win	added	paint	ggh	painted
start	أيبدأ	started	bake	ايخبز	baked
form	புத்து	formed	stn	ا تَنْتُلُفُ	stirred

#### Salt dough recipe

#### 1. Preparation time

10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

#### 2. Ingredients

Unit

1 cup of plain flour (about 250g)

a cup of salt (about 125g)

1 a cup of water (about 125ml)

#### 3. Method

- 1. Heat the oven on a low temperature.
- 2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl.

  Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.
- **3.** Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the snape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters or use the dough to make 3D objects.
- 4. Put your finished items on a baking tray and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard.
- 5. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.



### (Lilens 4-5



1. وقت التحضير

10 دقائق + 3 ساعات للطبخ

2. المكونات

1 كوب دقيق صافي (حوالي 250 جرام)

ردوالي 125 جم<sub>ا</sub>) کوب ملح (حوالي 125 جم<sub>ا</sub>)

رحوائي 125 مل) کوب ماء (حوائي 125 مل)

3. الطريقة

1. سدِّن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة.

، سس اسرن على حرج حرج 2. اخلط الدقيق والملح في وعاء كبير. أضف القليل من الماء، ثم أضف قليلًا منه مرة أحرس، وقلّب المزيح حتم يبدأ في تكوين كرة.

، حرف، وحجب الحرب على الله على الله عند أنه الله عند الل أَشْكَالَ أَوْ أَرْقَامَ أَوْ حَرُونَ مُنَهَا، أَوْ اسْتَخْدَمَ الْعَجِينَةُ لَعَمَلُ أَشْيَاءَ ثَلَاثَيَةَ الْأَبِعَادِ.

4. ضع العناصر النهائية على صينية خَبْز وأَدْخِلْهَا المُرنَ لمدة 3 ساعات حتى تَصبح صلبة.

5. اترك العناصر لتبرد، ثم قم بتلوينها.

When we write instructions for the steps in a process, we often number them. This shows the reader that they have to do the steps in order to complete the process correctly.

عيدي حيث بشادات لحصوات مي عمليةٍ ما، غالبًا ما يقوم بيرمك ها. بي بي د د ا . بيا ما نه عجي عجه الحيام بالحطوات بالتربيب لإكمال العملية بشكل طحيب

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. But what ese can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume



and medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

Connect 6 >

221



CANAL COLOR

براب المدر بنه أنداء البائد أسلاده في الدائخ المبرات الدائخ المرات الدائخ البائد أسلاد أنه البائخ الدائم في الدائخ الدائم في الرائد الدائم في الرائد المدرية في الدائم في الرائد المدرية في الدائم المدرية في الدائم المدرية في الدائم الدائم في الدائم في الدائم في الدائم الدائم الدائم في الدائم في الدائم الدائم المائم الدائم في الدائم في

produced the child lands are filling local



# Read and complete the text with the words in the box: combinations - spices - recipes - restaurants - ingredient

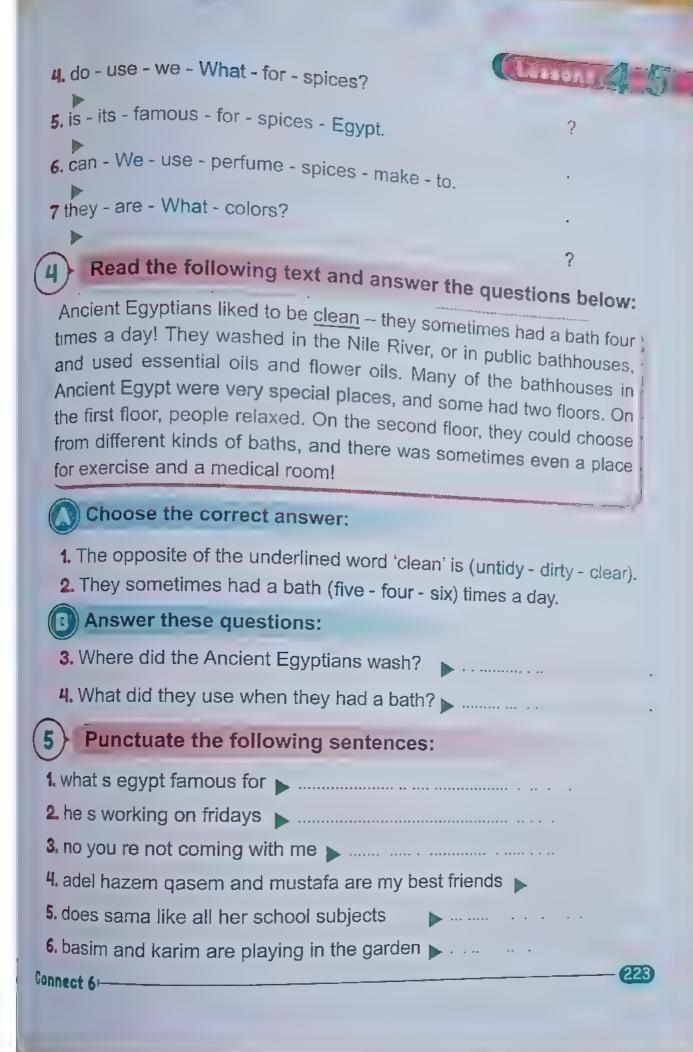
Egypt is famous for its (1) that are used in home cooking and all across the country. Special 3 of different spices are a secret ingredient in many 4

# Read and complete the text with the words in the box: tourists - packaged - perfume - souvenirs - cloth

We can use spices to make 1 and medicine, and to coor . They also make great 3 and are beautifully packaged for a visiting spice stores and socks

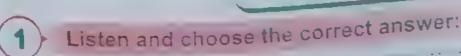
#### (3) Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. salt want make doesn't to dough He.
- ... would salt dough . . . ! you with make?
- 3. are We having together fun.

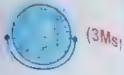


### Test 11 on Unit 6

خاص بالأزهر الشريف







### نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

- 1. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong (perfumes deodorants spices)
- 2. The most popular perfume was called (Powder Stick Kapet).
- 3. Kapet was (cheap expensive not expensive).
- 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:(3Ms)

### soap - halrbrush - perfumes - toothbrush

Mariam: Hi Salma. What are you doing?

Salma: Hi Mariam. I'm brushing my nair with a 1

Mariam: Do you always brush your teeth?

Salma: Yes, I always use a 2 ..... to clean my teeth.

Mariam: Good. You have lots of hea tny habits. Saima.

Salma: Yes. I also wash my hands with water and 3

very often.

### 3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 1. We need some (soap wax herbs) to make candles.
- 2. The king lives in a an apartment palace house).
- 3. How (many much often) books are there?
- 4. Injy doesn't have (some a any) money

### Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Fathi is a baker. He works in a bakery next to our house. It is very hot in the bakery. He sells bread to people after he puts it in bags. His wfe

Seham is a nurse in Al Helal Hospital. Her work is to help doctors and look after sick people. All patients love her and she loves them. She always amiles at them. She also looks after her family.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The underlined word "them" refers to the (patients doctors family).
- Answer these questions:
  - 3. What does a nurse do?
  - 4. Why do patients love Seham?
- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1 lemons many need we How do?
- 2. likes Sama tea a lot of her milk in.
- 3. lives in a Palace Peter big his parents with.
- Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

- farmers grow lots of different spices in egypt
- Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

#### "Egyptian flavors"

#### | deas to help you;

Egypt - famous - spices - cooking - ingredient - recipes - perfume medicine - buy - stores - souvenirs - tourists



Connect 6'

### Test 12 on Unit 6

نصا الأستماع موجودان أحر الكتاب.



### Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate (a little a few many much) meat
- 2. People often used (ducks fruit honey cheeks) with bread and cream
- 3. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit (foods vegetal

jars - drinks).



### Listen and complete the sentences:



(3Ms)

- 1. Egypt is famous for its .....
- 2. We also use spices to color
- 3. Fresh spices are one of the favorite ...

that tourists buy.



#### Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 1. We have (much any a little a lot of) candles.
- 2. They made (mint perfume toothpaste deodorant) candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.
- 3. Egypt is famous for its (spices streets souvenirs to ir sis) that are used in home cooking.
- 4. How (many much often old) coffee do you need? 50 Only a little.



#### Read and match "A" with "B":

(5Ms)



- 1. We need wax
- 2. I need a toothbrush
- 3. The king has a long
- 4. How much oil do we need?
- 5. How many books are there?

- a) to wash my face.
- b) There are 20 books.

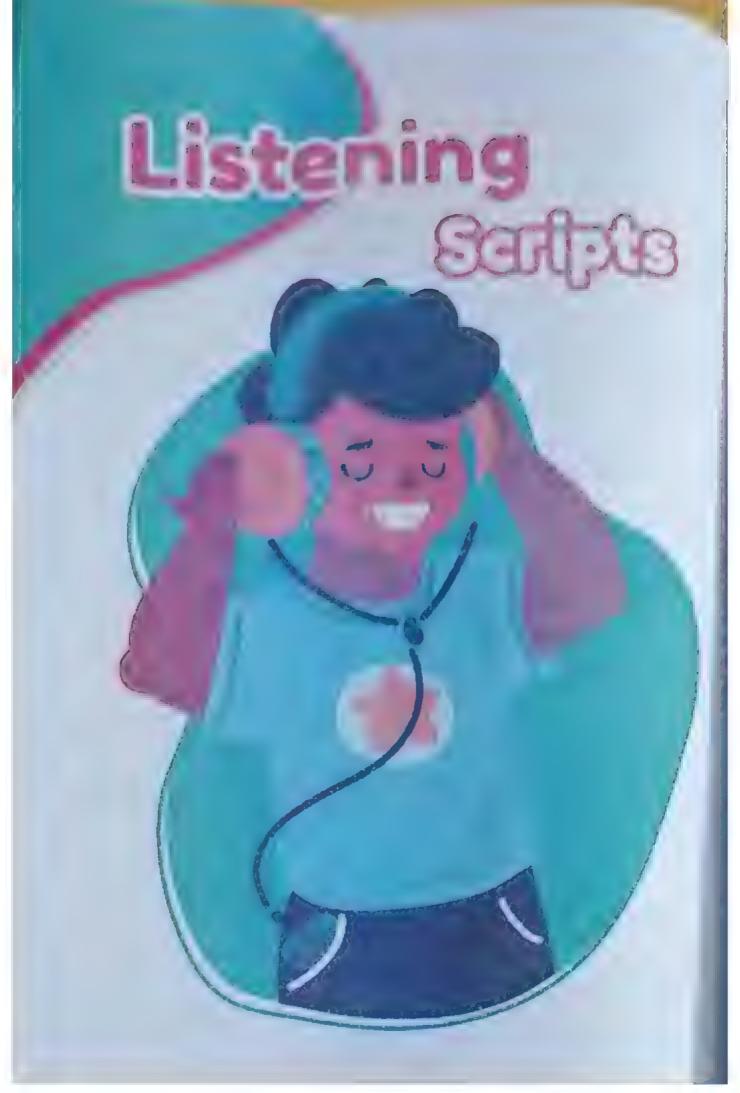
B

- c) to brush my teeth.
- d) to make candles.
- e) scepter in his hand.
- f) We need 300 grams.

Step Anes-

Read the text and answer the questions
their achool rules. School teachose duclents how to be subject to the polition of the politic of the po
Choose the correct answer:
Answer those questions:
3. What do students have to follow at school? 4. What does school teach students?
Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
1. Into - mixture - pieces Stir - the checolate the
7) Punctuate the following sentence:
• i enjoy this drink in egypt and morocco
Write an omail of (50) words to your British friend Bell: (6M).
Tell him about the famous drinks you have in your country, how you prepare them, what you put in them, and when do you drink them. Your email address is ramy@yahoo.com. And your friend's email address is bell@school.net
Q .
From :
Subject :
***************************************
Connect 6

معمومة صوب بر Camificanne







Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help of our vildlife. We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest. Olivation (



In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful | garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and pees on the plants Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden.



The community garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the market, too! Question 7



The west court is the large open area where students spend time outside. There is playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

Question 1

Connect 6-

Test

The IT Building is the building where you can find our computer classing my State of the property of the State of the Students of the Students

Test

The Abmed Zeald Bulling is the place where students study some and two new laboratories. These laboratories bake all the eq. (1) which classes need to do experiments



Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to vist her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. They can climate the lift to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. There is a great view from there.



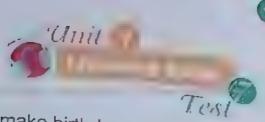
When the area of the Camival, you are suddenly in a world of fantas, are in a situation of the There are in any area to the like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!) and theaters are made in a can watch shows and concerts. There are places to eat indicates, too.



, the profession with my family for my special birthday surprise at the roller coaster of the co

are brave.

230



In Egypt, we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and



In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left





I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I go running every morning in the park. My friend Aser is organizing a party at his house for the end of





Today is Thursday. I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on I the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. Question 4



Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He visited China in the 13th century. He wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called the travels of Marco Polo

Question (



Connect 6+



Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style.



The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called Kapet. It was expensive. OHI MOIN



Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats. There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks. (nuitiva



Egypt is famous for its spices. We don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Fresh spices are one of the favorite souvenirs that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

Question .

# Stepaletto a bright future

# CONNECT 6 First Term

- Units Revision
  - Revision Tests
    - Answer Key





2024



Primary

0

#### Units havislen

### Properties and Mark-

### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

### usually - city - theater - shopping - stay

the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie 2

My sister can drive, so she 3 takes me in her car. And we alw. Yo to be estup for the heliday at find At Adha, too. We usually for a week at their house then.

### (i)

### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

### performance - species - local - hang - railway

residents the resident trains stopped residents then decided to make the residents the residents then decided to make the residents the residents then decided to make the residents the reside



#### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### play - brown - share - builds - silent

The selection and went to share his garden so he (1) higher trained to the total frame and there to 2).

The selection of the control of the

Slowly, the green grass turns 4 . .

Connect 6



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

side - Castle - friends - apartment - view Our 1 is in the city center, just next to a really park called The Meadows It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great 2 People use the park a lot for sports and meeting 3 so there's always something to see there. In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh @ \_\_\_\_\_ too!



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### miss - delicious - restaurants - taste - noisy

all the time. There are lots of different , New York is very ① here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the (2) food at home. I think the food tastes more 3 in Egypt, I Egyptian food so much!



### Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box;

#### often - kids - spend - Nile - countryside

Nadine: What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?

Gameela: I usually 1 time with my sisters. We often go shopping in the city center. What about you?

: I usually stay at home and he piny mom but I sometimes visit Nadine my grandparents with my sister; In'v. and her 2

Gamoela: Where do your grandpar ints the Natimo?

Nadine : They live in the 3 ा व farm. It's near a town called Assut Do , E. knows shirts notice River (4)

Gameela: Yes I know Asjutien war

- Step Aheed



### Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. Do you want to come
- 2. I always help my aunt
- 3. Where is the community garden?
- 4. The people who work there
- 5. We only use natural fertilizer
- d) It's a big green shace
- b) Ac never a sect all and
- c) In the middle of the city
- d) on Fridily afternoons.
- e) to my house?
- f) are all volunteers.



#### Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. Our apartment block is
- 2. The selfish giant doesn't
- 3. The lovely garden always
- 4. New York is very noisy,
- 5. He is too small

- a) makes the children happy.
- b) to climb up into the tree.
- c) new parks and green spaces.

1

- d) on the sixteenth floor.
- e) want to share his garden.
- f) but Alexandria is much quieter.



#### Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. Roof gardens also help
- 2. What do you usually do on weekends?
- 3. New York has
- 4. Where do your grandparents live? d) clean the air in the city.
- 5. We rarely have enough volunteers, e) a lot of green spaces.

- a) They live in the countryside on a farm.
- b) I miss our food so much.
- c) to help us with our projects.

- f) I usually spend time with my sisters.

#### Pead and match (1) with (1)

- 4
- 2. Where do your
- 3. My sister can dove.
- 4. Do you want to
- 5. They live in

- 0)
- b) 10 905
- c) Yes that sound
- d) the countrysule
- e) with my all.
- f) so she usually I

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. visits rarely us My grandpa
- 2. friends always his to Ahmed is good.
- 3. goes sometimes Akram swimming.
- 4. do club the often you How go to?
- 5. F3-3 and Thr 5 8 ds. garden aro mil a All.
- 6. :..:e . sits grandina a week She he,
- 7. with your hang out You friends can.
- 8. trees plant always We.

- 9. The way the try v. v.
- 10. Does finited tube vegition
- 11. I is The are people
- 12. The How Alexandria in ?
- 13. O go there I my often with
- 14. Figure walk can the You through
- 15. time New York very all noisy is the
- 16. . · I ⊢.vs me from Tell all home
- 17. theater go movie We to sometimes
- 18. my spend usually time sisters I with.
- 19. The countryside a farm in They on live
- 20. What like you your neighborhood about

#### Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1. . , work has a lot of green spaces
- 2. egyptian food so much

onnect 6

#### flow[1] form

- 2. your now dir en sounds great marrain
- 4. how are things in alexandria
- 5. there are lets of restaurants in new york
- 6. what things does she miss about edypt
- 7. please write back soon
- 8. how are things with you
  - ▶
- 9. is ahmed good at planting trees
  - -
- 10. It is the test to their
  - •
- 11. I don't know the names of chinese dishes

- 13. what s wael's favorite place in usa
- E

### Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- 1. \* ... : / carpenters volunteers mechanics) They don't to a money.
- 2. I miss leave come back, my home. I cant to go book, such
- 3. 7 2 Martin and and management (garden roof block).



- on the farm
- 5. ( oden tentame that it ) means we only use natural fertilizer we never use chemicals
- 6. Farmers (plant harve-1 harve-1 begetables, then eat or sell them
- 7. We (an with the to) crops to eat
- 8. People buy and (sell grow malic) things at the market
- 9. They only use natural (\* oil fertilizer water). They never use chemicals.
- 10. Roof gardens help (clean wash sweep) the air in the city
- 11. People who live in one neighborhood are local (lore gners residents tourists).
- 12. Our apartment is on the sixteenth (flour flower floor).
- 13. He is (sad angry selfish). He wants everything for himself.
- 14. They plant a lot of areas and make them (yellow green blue).
- 15. He got on the train at the (bus railway taxi) station.



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. He doesn't often (see sees saw) his friends at weekends.
- 2. How often do you (work working works) in the community garden?
- 3. Soha (never doesn't does) helps in the kitchen.
- 4. Ahmed (is always always is nas always) good to his friends.
- 5. How (often old many) does she visit her grandma?
- 6. She visits her grandpa (two twice one) a week.
  - 7. Amr (rarely always often) plays football. He doesn't like sports.
  - 8. Nadine's grandparents (live lives living) in Cairo.

Connect 61

- 9. How does she (gets got get) har in from state
- 12 What factors and at Link Add
- 11 AVE at a second of Athense a Clares, for the consequence of
- 12. Store January have mon and 17
- 13 There ( ) a big gymn, often competition in our par
- 14. Dates (have had has) a lot of sugar in them
- 15. She (has usually usually has usually does) the end of a broadle of
- 16.1 (sometimes play play sometimes sometim ( ) term, and weekend
- 17. Donia and Wael (never are are never don't) late for school.
- 18. I don't like chicken I ( on board of the board) eat it
- 20. She ( . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . ) her exam,
- 21. He ( . . ! In t) goes to bed late
- 22. She ( . . . . . study always a way tal,) after class
- 23. We ; 'n prosection do go often) shopping in the city center
- 24. Our teacher (he or give gives never never dives) us homework on weekends.



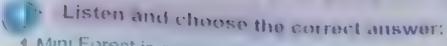
Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: "A day you spent with your friends"

> park - bus - enjoy - play - eat - drink - home tired - happy



### Unit 1 All

citially by sandardaman ben



- 1. Mini Forest is an o transmonach (plan to be processed) anall areas street and the street and the
- 3. 1 reas help our (wildlife - neighborhood - gardons) like points are incomed to any things

### Listen and complete the sentences:

(3M4)

Total

( \$1,1 )

- twenty idles of vegetables a year gardens also help clean the air in the city
- a. Roof griden and and ratiplace to meet people and

friends.



### Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 1. He never dida't doesn't don't) goes to work at night.
- 2. In the year I (watch usually usually watches, usually watches, usually watches, usually) it on TV.
- 3. More you care (serious active settish helpful), good things happen.
- 4. bey plant ties and they carefully look (for up after tike) them until they become a small forest.

#### Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

- 1. No avens work hard to
- 3. The selfish giant doesn't
- 1 the content of the desired
- 5. We often go

- a) plants in our projects.
- b) to make the old railway into a big, long park.
- c) shopping in the city center.
- d) and the best urban locations for our forests.
- e) want to share his garden.
- f) of different kinds of plants and animals.

Connect o

Сапіздання ін фай варшав

### The fillen an with a



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### takes - who - which - boring - where

Wandaland is a fante so TV array (1)

of all age groups, it a interest, no be accorded.

future on a planet called tWandar Days aworld (3)

five because the Earth is now on that the scale talk the stay of a boy called Frey (9)

wants to be torn to fraith to rook for his family. Frey is a clever, queet boy who finds life on Wanda borning.



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### touch - friendly - pets - fur - teeth - claws

Cats are my favorite animals to this kith inside the pertipets. They are beautiful with soft. 

Which is to a to a some in the cats have some in the cats have some and cats have some a

them when they are scared.



#### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### buildings - find - modern - map - proud

them for.

Connect 6



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

### noise - hungry - stomach - Hares - carrots

It's a supply dray and Hare lie in the graph Gooddenly her (1) makes a fould noise. Hare remembers the 2 in her combine But which is specified to her combine she stops. What is that 3 inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asked fine if a ry where you care, says a fould voice. "Hare, don't come in [1] your come in, 11, call you are my favorite food."



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### calculate - measurements - paint - wall - classroom

Hatem's wall needs painting. The class (2) how much they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the (4). Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.



#### Read and match (A) with (B):

- 11. How does Hazem feel?
- Welcome to
- 3. I have a lot of books
- He is very clever and
- 5. When you feel nervous,

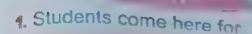
- a) try to be calm.
- **b)** in my room at home.

( SB

- c) he is good at math
- d) He feels a Lit nervous.
- e) our school.
- f) are really organized.



### Read and match (A) with (B):



2. Lats are independent,

3. It's a sunny day,

4. Cats are beautiful with soft fur

5. What is

a) which is nice to touch

b) and Hare lies in the grass.

c) that noise?

d) when they are scared

e) their information technology

f) so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.



### Read and match (A) with (B):

1. There are four classrooms and

2. Friendly means

3. Mustafa is very polite.

4. I'm excited to see

5. This is the building

a) He shows respect to everyone.

b) where you can find our computer classrooms.

c) a fantasy TV series.

d) helps in the garden.

e) two new laboratories.

f) nice to others, helpful.



### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. yet - books - Do - have - all your - you?

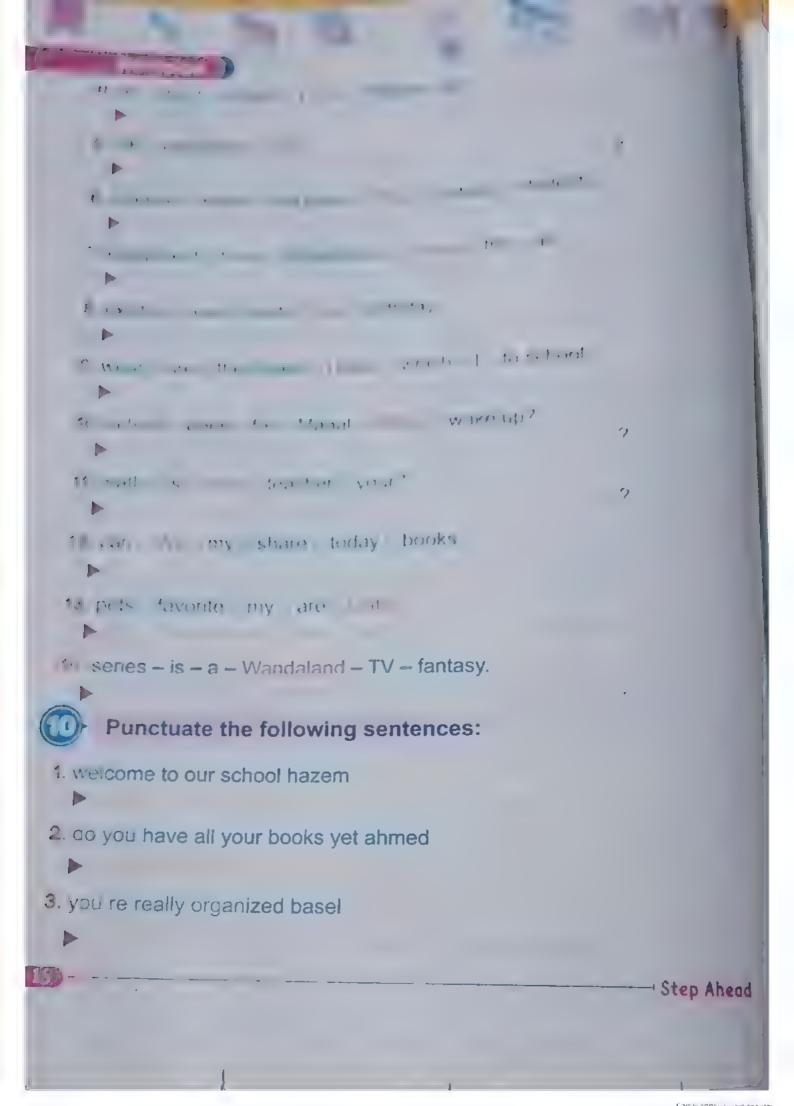
**·** 

2. the - library - keep - We - in - calm - all.



3. does - Karima - How - feel - today?

9



- म्, I love english and arabic
- 5. I love the story of hare
- 6. no we don t need to get up early on saturdays
- 7. lions are not friendly animals
- 8. amira and huda are going to school next monday
- 9. cairo is the capital of egypt
- 10. hello my name is hassan ali

onnect 6+

### Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- 1. Come on, I'll (give share show) you where the science classroom is.
- 2. I'm a bit (noisy organized messy). I am not sure which textbooks I already have.
- 3. He's very (lazy clever calm), so he is good at math.
- 4. It's my first day at school and I (feel have eat) a bit nervous and shy.
- 5. Wow! You're really (messy noisy organized). I want to be like you.
- 6. Cats are (independent noisy naughty), so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.
- 7. (Polite Nervous Messy) people always show respect to others.
- 8. Sara is very (messy friendly shy). She likes talking to people.
- These laboratories have all the (equipment students teachers) that classes need to do the experiments.
- Please study the (map book notebook) and find out where the main buildings are.
- 11. Bees are insects which make (butter honey milk).
- 12. Hatem's classroom walls need (writing painting drawing).

47

#### Revision

- 13. Cats have soft (eyes fur teeth) which is nice to touch. 14. For as everybody knows, elaphants are (afraid - shy polite) of mice.
- 15. Cats are the best (birds insects pets) for my brother.

## GRAMMAR REVISION

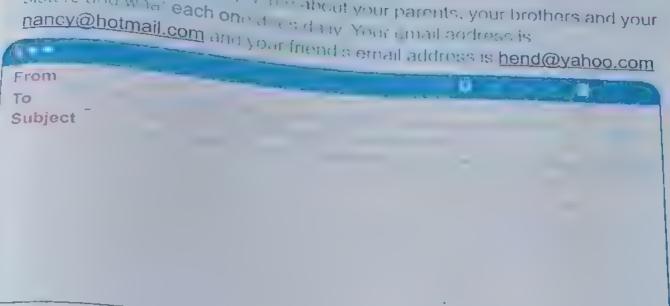
#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Mr. Maged is the man (which when who) is always ready to help us
- 2. The bank is the place (where who what) we keep our money.
- 3. We always like people (which who when) tell the truth.
- 4. This is the house (what where who) Habiba lives.
- 5. The teacher punished the students (when who which) were shouting
- 6. There was a princess (who which where) lived in a castle.
- 7. Thank you for the present (who which where) you sent me.
- 8. That is the town (where when who) he met his wife for the first time
- 9. A school is a place (which who where) we can learn.
- 10. The Nile is the river (who where when) we go fishing.
- 11. Amr was very much (please pleased pleasing) with his idea.
- 12. It would be (interested interesting interest) to study about space and science.
- 13. It is not (surprise surprised surprising) that it is raining. It is very cold outside.
- 14. I was very (boring tired tiring), so I went to bed early.
- 15. His birthday party was (excited exciting excite).
- 16. This noise of the street is very (annoy annoying annoyed).
- 17. The film I watched was very (tired boring).
- 18. The new sport he is practicing is (bored tiring tired).
- 19. He is very (boring tiring tired) when he finishes doing that sport
- 20. Kholud was (excite excited exciting) about going to the cinema.
- 21. I like most types of fruit, (and or but) I don't like pears.
- 22. My new school is great, (or but and) it's far from my house
- 23. We want to go to the beach, (but and or) it's raining today.



Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hend:

Tell her about your family Wri . about your parents, your brothers and your sisters and what each one day of the Your chial address is



### Unit 2 Test 2





نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب. Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

- 1. Hatem's classroom wall needs (building painting mending fixing).
- 2. The class (write think count calculate) how much paint they need to paint the wall.
- 3. They (build paint measure pulls) the wall and write down the measurements.



### Listen and complete the sentences:



(3Ms)

- 1. Wandaland is a fantasy TV
- 3. It's because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda.
- 3. This is a too hot.

where humans live because the Earth is now

Connect 6-

- 2. The person the remaining of 5.39 is (5:40 6.00 7.00) 5.50)
- 3. The Living than the wholes playing tennis is my son. 4. I hate shopping. It is a very (interesting - tinn to interested tired) we
- activity.



#### Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. Why does to gen to a neglective
- 2. There is
- 3. Which school subject to you like mini-
- 4. North proces
- 5. Who is in Hare's house?

- a) to sit on under the trees.
- Land Stry
- c) [ ... ... 8.
- par o assrooms d)
- e) Because i's his first day at scipor today.
- f) Physical education.



### Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms.

(5M3

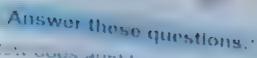
Aunt Laila has got two children. Snady is nine years old and his sister Dina is four. Shady always plays with his sister while his mother is cooking. washing or cleaning. He is always nice to his small sister.

One Friday morning, the two children were playing in their bedroom. While their mether was cooking in the kitchen. Dina sundenly began to cry and ran to the kitchen to her mother. Aunt there asked her, Why are you crying, Dina?" Shady has broken my and hima answered, crying more loudly. "How did he break it?" her methor soil. I Dana stooped crying and said 'It borke when i hit him on his head with it."



### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Shady is (four five nine) years 1, 2: fran his sister.
- 2. Dina is the writer's (aunt cousin sister)





?

- 3. 10% occas aunt Laila do her work at home?
- 4. Who broke the doll? How?

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ws)

- 1. you to my Do want see school?
- 2. year go a once We Alexandria to
- 3. pet write Does about favorite her Ola?

Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

- o who is going to travel to aswan

Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"Why you like your pet"

- r Ideas to help you:

  - ▶ Describe your pet.
    ▶ Say what you do with it every day.
  - ► Say how you look after it. ► Why do you like it?





### Revision on Unit



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box;

### book - helmet - tour - biking - trip

I found some information online about quad (1) If you ride a quag the desert Youthand to wear a " Without the role of the contract that continue the staget with to our which the tour at the other in town. If we book the can (3) (4) today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

### characters - action - background - details - understand

Pictures can help you (1) what a story is about and give you extra (2) . For example, the (3) show you where the (4) happens, and the taces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

### exciting - fantasy - theme park - theaters - rides

When you arrive at the theme park, you are suddenly in a (1) world - it's really (2) There are amazing (3) There's a lot to see and do here

(4) to try like the rollercoanter, and where you can watch shows



# Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

at - on - get up - homework library Hi. I'm Nader, I (1)

Section of the American Start with my sister (2) to the (3)

r rect play Sports 4 

Step Aheat

سوخه صول یا Canthua the



## Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. Thoras at a creating the freezer.
- 2. Study for about 30 minutes.
- 3. Can we use a pencil
- 4. Please turn the music down
- 5. What does this word mean. Sherif?
- a) but no longer
- b) it's too loud
- e) I don't know. Look it up in a dictionary
- d) you don't get message from them.
- e) It's not working
- f) in the test?



## Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1, we book the tour today,
- 2. It's better to study
- 3. If you don't close the door of the freezer properly,
- 4. When you study hard,
- 5. When you buy two T-shirts,

- a) it doesn't work
- b) you get good grades.
- c) you get one free.
- d) it's cheaper
- e) the clouds are red.
- f) at the same time each day.



#### Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. I'm with my family for my birthday
- 2. You can ask your father
- 3. Let's go to the theme
- 4. We can visit
- 5. We can go quad

- a) park and ride on a rollercoaster!
- b) we are all very friendly.
- c) biking in the desert in Giza.
- d) surprise at the Carnival!
- e) if you want any help with your homework.
- f) the Manial Palace Museum first.

#### Revision



## Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. The tour guide will
- 2. What time will
- 3. You have to wear a helmet
- 4. I need my credit card
- 5. Which two cities do the boys mention?

- a) Cairo and Giza.
- b) to pay for the tickets.
- c) wearing helmets.
- d) he meet us?
- e) if you ride a quad bike.
- f) meet us at the hotel.

## PReorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. the forest through Deer Little runs.
- 2. Bab Zuweila the girls do What at do?
- 3. Sunday on like What the is weather?
  - Þ
- 4. Monday on the souks explore we Should?
- 5. my family time I my a lot enjoy with.
- 6. Museum the to go Manial Let's Palace. N 10 1 12
- 7. vacation really am our about I excited. .
- 8. We Cairo to travel can.
- 9. our this week about I'm vacation excited.
- 10. beautiful the top from view The is.

- 11. Sundays often up late on I get.
- 12. quad can desert We biking in the go.
- 13. will Where guide the us meet?
- 14. do we can else What?
- 15. What get we do back time?
- 16. will guide meet The tour us the hotel at.
- 17. helmets wearing is Everyone.
- 18. need I my credit card pay for to the tickets.

## Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1. we celebrate sham el-nessim in spring
- 2. my english always gets better if i practice it
- 3. how can we get to giza if we miss the bus
- 4. how does a rollercoaster work
- 5. they went on a trip to the red sea
- 6. i m having a party next thursday
- 7. let s go to alexandria in august

- on the colors of the one
- 🤋 my brother doesn t like camivals
- 10. there are many buses from luxor to aswart

# (I) Choose the correct answer! Vecabulary

- Thots qualither maral and (the one purposed conferences to 2 When you have regular breaks, you (concerns to longer II has) more
- . We (and create do) Sham Hillerson in Spinis a Count news! We are closing having long party on my birthday
- 5 If we book now, we re-sure to (buy of the little sent). 6. We can (draw - take - paint) photos at the Manual Palace Museum for my
- school project.
- 7. The tublet (jumps turns switches off) if you press this button 8. Falma realract of (width length moights). She doesn't want to climb up
- 9. In the evening, we can watch the (sunner runset sunshine).
- 10. Let's (place there in the) some activities for the trip
- 11. People's brains (work torget vis.t) better if they have a regular routing
- 12. Dad and I want to go to the simulation ( ... Ileader river) to see the show.
- 13. I don't want to (walk climb inde) that high mountain
- 14. My father telt (proud angry wor is t) when I got high marks

# GRAMMAR REVISION

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. If you press the button the tablet ( sat it is a need sautches) off.
- 2. Does your aunt always make a cake when you ( \_\_\_\_\_ are visiting visiti her?
- 3. If he (haven't doesn't have the can't buy that expensive car.
- 4. We can't go to Alexandria if we (missed miss misses) the train.

5. If it rains, I always (takes - will take - take) an umbrella.

6. When the weather is nice, I (go - would go - goes) to the park 7. If we (hurry - don't hurry - aton't hurry), we'll miss the train.

g. They (would visit - can visit - visit) us when they come to Cairo.

9. If you don't know the answer, (ask - will ask - can cas) your teacher 10. My sister's birthday is (at - on - in) March.

11. We will meet our friends (at - m - on) luncht me

12. My wedding will be (on - a. - in) April 6th

13. We will visit our grandpa (in - at - on) the weekend

14. I don't get up early (in - at - on) Fridays.

15. I usually go to bed (at - on - in) 10 o'clock.



Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: "A week you spent in Sharm El-Sheikh"

nice - beaches - tourists - diving - coral reefs - sun - fresh air



## Unit 3 Test 3

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.



#### Listen and choose the correct answer:



(3Ms)

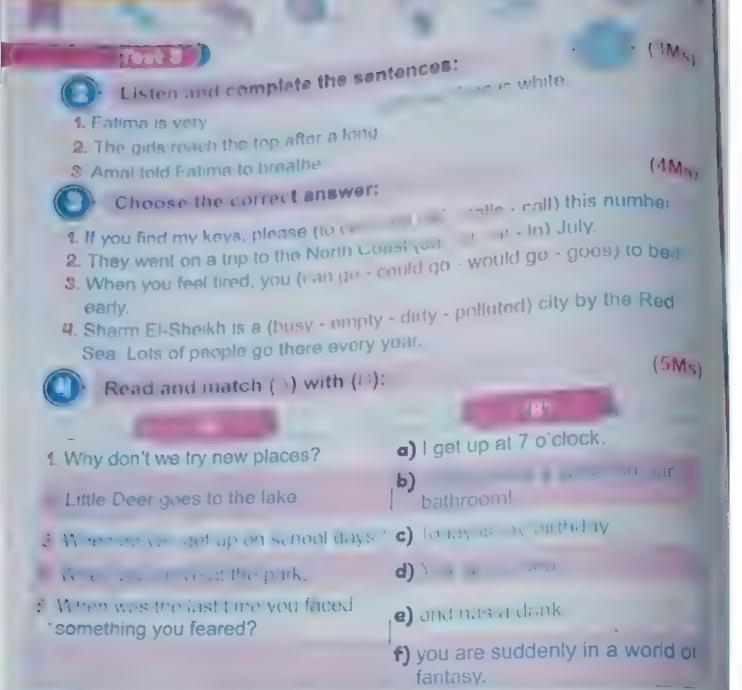
1. If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can (play - read - go remember) better in the afternoon.

2. It's helpful if you (give - write - take - help) down a list of what you want

to do each time you study.

3. You can (dive - drive - check - leave) the point you finish off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

Connect 6-

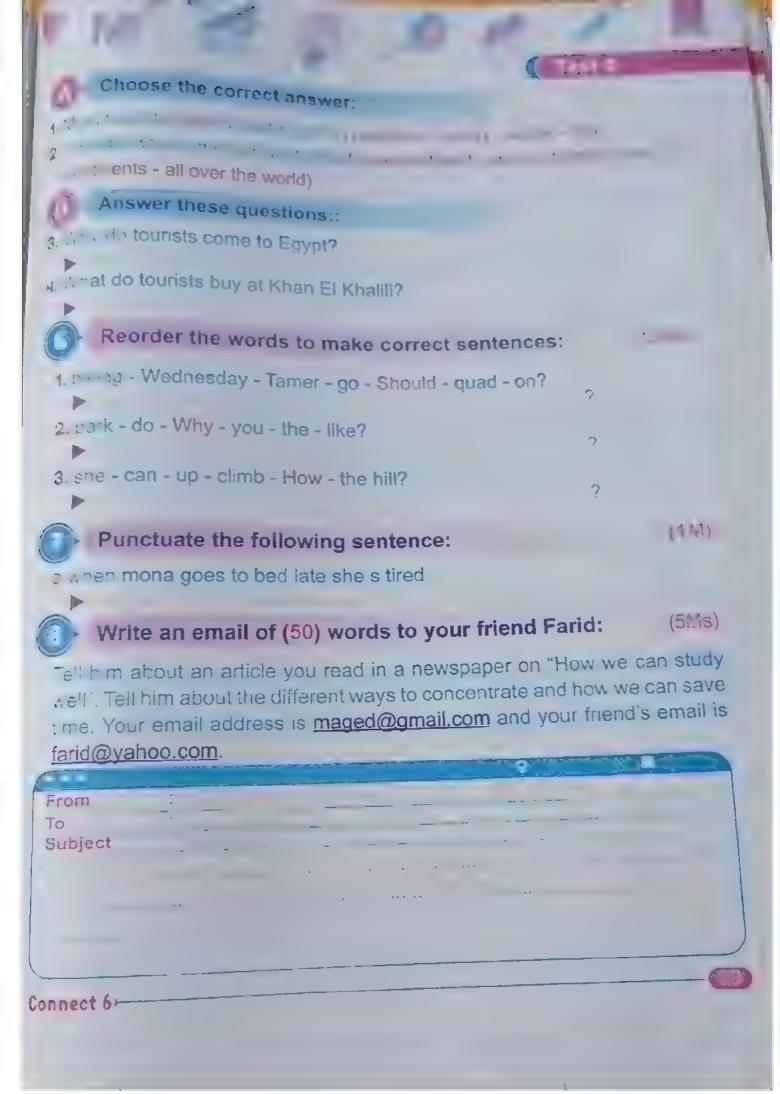




#### Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Every warter 'housands of people from every part of Europe, America and Asia come to spend their holidays in our great country. Egypt. They are tourists who come to enjoy the fine weather and sanishing of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries. They like to visit have and Aswain. They like to see the arruent treasures of Egypt, so they like to visit the Egyptian Museum. They aslo visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Gida. Before they return home, they like to go to Khan El Khail, to buy some souvenirs.



## Andrews on Unit



## Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

## cyrling - worry - running - exams - free

I'm studying hard for my (1

at the moment. But ye,

Land pending all my lime indoor "I know it's import,"

to get outcute metal's management of ton college

F: 1600

morning in the park. I'm also (4)

on the merends with it

dad. Riding bikes is fun.



#### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### birthday - food - countries - noodles - life

Some (1)

have different birthday food in China.

people like to eat long 2

or peaches on their

. Why? Because they think that these can give

you a long (4)



# Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

## local - organizing - celebration - inviting - invite

Hi Maha. I am writing to 1 you to our school's Mother's

Day

this year. We are 3

a special

day for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the 4.

who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend

community



# Read and match (^) with (F):

- (4, Amr has a very nice playlist on his mobile. (a) streamers for Hala's party.
- 3. I'm hanging up the
- 4. Guests are people who
- 5. They're decorating

- b) the birthday cake.
- c) people are coming.
- d) to cut the string.
- e) We can play it in the party.
- f) you invite to your home



## Read and match ( $\wedge$ ) with ( $\mathbb{B}$ ):

- 1. We are inviting people from the local
- 2. Egyptian people often sing
- 3. What's the weather like in Aswan?
- 4. Hove history books and
- 5. Amr is organizing a party

- a) It's really hot there.
- b) community who often help our school.
- c) the documentary is good too.
- d) at his house after the exams.
- e) songs at birthday parties.
- f) do this with one breath!



#### Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. In China, people like to eat
- 2. Birthdays are
- 3. What are
- 4. I'm writing to invite you
- 5. We have an amazing prize

- a) your news?
- b) to our school's Mother's Day celebration.
- c) you reading?
- d) long noodles or peaches on their birthday.
- e) celebrated all over the world.
- f) for the best costume.

## Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 1. the party - We - you - hope - attend - can. 2. coming - are - people - many - How? ? 3. Can - balloons - you - up - some - blow? I. please - phone, - I - your - Can - borrow? 5. the party - the cake - you - for - Will - bake? 6. are - playing - They - with - the balloons football. 7. an armchair - reading - Amira - in - is - a book. the me - the glue, - an - pass - please - you? 2 a special day - the event - are - We - for - organizing. 10. for - party - birthday - the - is · Who? Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1. do you often go to birthday parties
- 2. what are you doing youssef
- 3. we can ask adel to make a playlist
- 4. i don t like chocolate cake
- 5. mr yousry is blowing up the balloon
- 6. we are practicing for the football game on sunday

- 7. will you feed the cat please
- g, we don't know how to make a cake
- 9. yes marwa bought a new car
- 10. no I don t think heba will come



## Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- 1. My parents usually go to our school's Mother. Day (information adequation)
- 2. Children like to (hang up blow out let off) the candles on their birthday cakes
- 3. We are inviting people from the local (buildings forest comment).
- д. Children need an adult to (hang up blow up let off) the fireworks
- 5. The cook is (hanging blowing decorating) the birthday cake
- 6. I'm (hanging up decorating inviting) the streamers for my sister's birthday party
- 7. Are you (sending decorating hanging) the invitations?
- 8. Dalida is going to make a (fireworks playlist streamers) on her phone.
- 9. (CD DVD RSVP) means please reply
- 10. There's (at about on) 4 liters of water in total
- 11. (Adults Babies Kids) are fully grown people, not children
- 12. We always invite (guests animals birds) to birthday parties.
- 13. I like eating (noodles traditions countries).
- 14. We very much hope you can (come attend go) the party





#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1.1 (is are am) not having fun with Ali.
- 2. (Is Are Am) Amr and his friends playing now?
- 3. Laila (enjoying enjoy enjoys) her time in London.
- 4. She's (wear wears wearing) a beautiful dress.

Connect 6"

33

- 5. Where ( ) are is) Mona and her father staying? 6. Can you (and a state of the party?

  7. Will you do to a state of the party?
- 7. Will you (toke a rebaking bakes) the cake for the party?
- 8. (IS AD IVIII) Noha and H my trying to dance.

- 10. I (am an not t n t) studying these days We are in summer vacation
- 11. Why (r. 101 101) your brother shouting?
- 12. She (san per canquiq esings) on the stage now
- 13. Girls (1. att will) helping their mother to make a cake
- 4. Where (are -1 will) Selim and Osama playing football?
- 15. Look! They (practice are practicing practice.) hard the next game



## Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: "Mother's Day Celebration"



- Nhen we clebrate it
- ➤ What the celebration is for
- ➤ What present you buy for mom









## Listen and choose the correct answer:



(3Ms)

- 1. In your email you ask me what I'm (writing our reading).
- 2. The book is taking (pages ages stages) because I'm a slow reader.
- 3. I love (story mistory study) books and the documentary is good, too.

يصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكياب.

Step Ahead

Canthonine a way expense



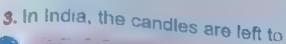
# Listen and complete the sentences:

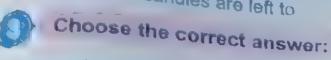
(3Ms) =

1. Children everywhere like

2. Children like to

out the candles on their birthday cakes.





(4Ms)

- 1. If you don't blow out the candles they (burn get bigger turn on -
- 2. Amira! Are you (sending spending inviting blowing) the invitations?
- 3. What (am are is does) your brother reading now?
- 4. Is he (take taking takes took) photos at the moment?



## Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

- 1. How many liters of water
- 2. My dad is working in France
- 3. My mom always makes a
- 4. Egyptian people often sing
- 5. I'm working on

- a) songs at birthday parties.
- b) from the clothes they are wearing.
- c) a new project.
- d) so we miss him.
- e) do you use when you take a shower?
- f) cake when it's my birthday.



#### Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Next Thursday, Mayar is going to have a birthday party. All her friends will come to the party. On Tuesday, Mayar and her mother will go to the shops to buy some foods for the party. They will buy lots of cakes and sweets. Mayar has got a book about games. She is reading the book and she will choose some games. It will be a nice party.

onnect 6





- 1. Mayar is reading a book about (sports games parties music).
- 2. Mayar and her mother wil. go shopping on (Thursday Tuesday -Friday - Saturday).



#### Answer these questions::

- 3. When is Mayar going to have a party?
- 4. Who will come to Mayar's party?



# Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1. wall classroom a poster Display your on.
- 2. addressed invitation the is Who to?
- 3. an armchair reading Amira a book in is



#### Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o are there any special birthday traditions in egypt



### Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms) "A present you received on your birthday"

#### > Ideas to help you:

- ▶ What present?
- ➤ Why?

- ► Who gave?
- Your feeling.







# Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

## journey - island - port - weather - possible

TO THE HOLD FORD BOND BOND BY WITH THE TO

The ship

· in ( leave the 2

so my journey to the mysterious

sped wasn't 1 , I can see the U

, rough my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm

year and there are green mountains at its land center



## Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

## dromedaries - village - water - caravan - dunes

The dromedaries in the ① moved slowly up and down the 2 swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went mard Lop Nur, the last (3) before the empty wasteland or the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers - no people, no plants, no (4)



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### trip - felucca - sails - travel - skills

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A 1 is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the 2 was amazing. We went slowly down to do it. The 3 the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white 4 which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful - a lovely way, to travel.

onnect 6+

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box favority - diary - visiting - remember - vacation

Rana: What are you reading Engy?

I want to

Engy: Oh hi, Rana. It is my travel (1)

my family's (3)

in Croatia

: What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

Marco Polo museum.

: I think it was (4) Engy



#### Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. Who was Marco Polo?
- 2. The journey was difficult.
- 3. He rode a camel
- .4. We had a delicious lunch
- 5. Sand dunes are like

- a) on board the felucca.
- b) to control or change
- c) It took years!
- d) huge, yellow waves.
- e) all the way to China.
- f) He was an Italian explorer.



### Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1. What was your favorite
- 2. A team of archaeologists
- 3. The Nok people's culture
- 4. Clay is a type of earth
- 5. Almost 100 years ago,

- a) that's sticky when wet.
- b) to help create new ideas.
- c) thing about the vacation?
- d) there was a very surprising discovery.
- e) is still a mystery today.
- f) went to the area to find out more.

## Read and match (A) with (B):

- 4 thad quite a relaxing
- g. The weather will be good
- 5. Today I had an amazing experience.
- II. The bridge in the village
- 6. The weather was still bad

- a) I went on a felucca on the Nile.
- b) la damaged and dangerous.
- c) and there was heavy rain.
- d) to sond his luggage to Japan.
- with no rain.
- f) sleep in my cabin last night.

## Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1, the Nile on River went I on a felucca.
- 2. the captain does describe How she of the boat?
- 3. pyramids think of the writer What the great did?
- 4. stopped things to see We Incredible some.
- 5. leave the sun will when comes up The ship.
- 6. the captain news good was from There.
- 7. this place very in seems Time slowly to move.
- 8. for long walks went the ship around 1.
- 9. In the day spend his time How the writer does?
- 10. island explore the mysterious can 1.

#### Revision



## Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1. how does the writer describe the island
  - Maria de la companya del companya de la companya de la companya del companya de la companya de l
- 2. the water in the sea wasn t warm
- 3. which egyptian animal does it look like
- 4. nader and walld were in my class last year
- 5. we had a great time at the carnival
- 6. the nok people's tools were made of stone
- 7. did uncle hazem travel to england last july
- 8. yes that s true
- 9. winters in egypt aren t very cold
- 10. he went to china eight hundred years ago

## Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- 1. Marco Polo went on a long (flight voyage drive) by sea.
- 2. He stopped and went (cross · pass across) the desert.
- 3. He (drove rode flew) a camel to China.
- 4. The (inventor explorer worker) always wants to know new things
- 5. The Nok culture in Nigeria is still a (mystery story book) today. No one knows a lot about it.
- 6. Antarctica is a cold (city continent country).

40



- 7. (Axe Tool Clay) & Har a real to that is stoky when well
- 8. The sand idiones done down with the huge yellow waves 9. There are the many of any of ary
- 10. I can fy my kie who there who rain I grithing is
- 11. We had a mysterious delicious relaxing) lunch yesterday. 12. The traveler that the Leasure - voyage treature) on an island. It was
- 13. The place was (quit quite quiet) and peaceful.
- 14. The (inspiration imagination transportation) is an example others use to help create new ideas
- 15. (Clay Axes Tools) are things we use to cut trees and wood.
- 16. When something is (advanced ancient old), it's far ahead in development.
- 17. When someone makes a an experiment inspiration discovery), he finds something that people didn't know about.





### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. We didn't (have had has) a vacation this year.
- 2. Where did you (found founded find) your book?
- 3. My mother (is were was a clever student when she was young.
- 4. Were Was Is) your friend here yesterday?
- 5. The plane (fly was fly flew, high in the sky.
- 6. I finished my homework and my father (reads read reading) a book.
- 7. Did Omar (catch caught catches) the bus last night?
- 8. My brothers (doesn't go aren't go didn't go) out.
- 9. What did Habiba (does do did) ast week?
- 10. Did your's ster (wins won win) the first prize?
- 11. Was D.d Were) Saieh and his family at the club last Friday?

Connect 6 -

#### Revision

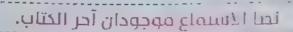
- 12. Did the thief (told tell tells) the truth?
- 13. They (rode rides were ride) a camel all the way home
- 14. How did people (got get get ) to India in those days?
- 15. Marco Polo (sail sailed was sail) to Korcula by ship.
- Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: "An amazing journey"



where to - with whom - why amazing - spent time - activities - see - souvenirs



## Unit 5 Trail





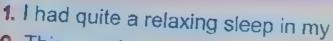
## Listen and choose the correct answer:

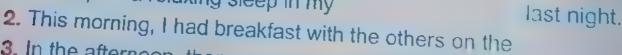


(3Ms)

- 1. A team of (vets doctors archaeologists) went to the area of Nok to find out more.
- 2. There were also iron and stone (sports farming sailing) tools.
- 3. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very (advanced - similar - around) culture.

## Listen and complete the sentences:





3. In the afternoon, there was good news from the

(3Ms)



# Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- f. (Archaeologists f., ... Inventors Farmers) are people who dig
- 2. The boat had two white constant and the world and the world
- 3. (Were Did Was 1 your fitter that the wins when he was younger?
- 4 (not Alicha a have had having) his dinner?



## Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

- 1 They found sculptures of
- 2 West revourceding by
- 3. The museum had a lot of
- a The damedaries are
- 15. There were many strange legends

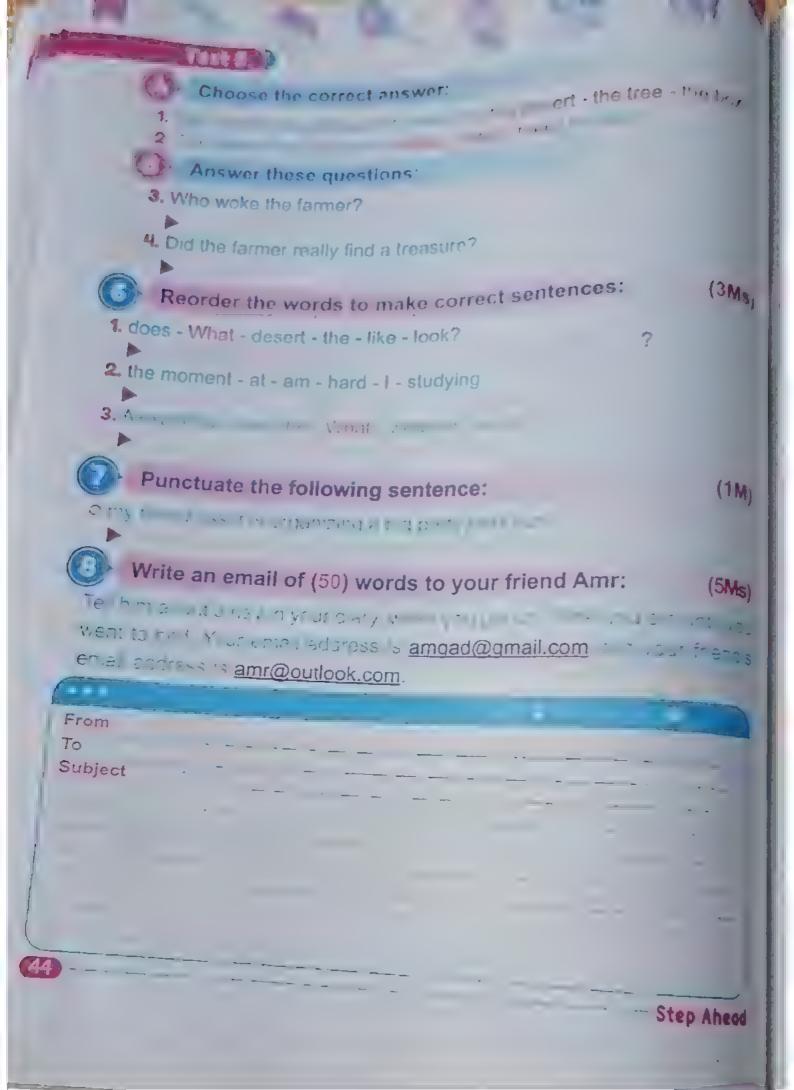
- (a) It's my travel diary.
- b) the other name of the camels.
- c) were beautiful clay sculptures.
- d) He didi Theheve it em
- e) humans under the ground.
- f) objects from ancient China.



#### Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

A poor farmer was working on his small farm. He slept under a tree and had a dream. He found a map in an old piece of cloth, it was showing where a treasure "gold and jewels" was hidden in the desert. He rode his donkey and went to the desert carrying tools to dig in the sand. He found the place and began to dig, and after half an hour, he found the box. He got it out and opened it. It was full of gold. He asked himslef, "What would I do? What would I buy? A big house? A car or what?" Then he heard someone calling, "Wake up, wake up, your lunch is ready, poor husband," his wife said.





## Revision on Unit

# Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

## roots - protects - shiny - healthy - oils When you brush your - it it still ends the nature (1)

your hair from the (2) shiny and 4

# Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

## Egypt - honey - dates - bees - drinks

There were a lot of 1 in Ancient Egypt, and that means Pera was 2 People often used honey with bread and ream to make cakes. They also used a few (3) make sweet fruit (9)



## Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

### cheap - expensive - perfumes - mint - herbs

The Ancient Ecyptians loved strong .. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was ② ... because it had a lot Fingledients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common 3 .... in it, like rosemary and 4 and apides like cardamom and disnamon



### Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

#### jars - dried - spices - preserve - taste

s he families in Aria of Egy, there how to use 1 ...... a unerps to make their conking 2. .... better, and they SUKNEW how to 3 food For eximple they died fish to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

Connect 6-



### Read and match (A) with (B):

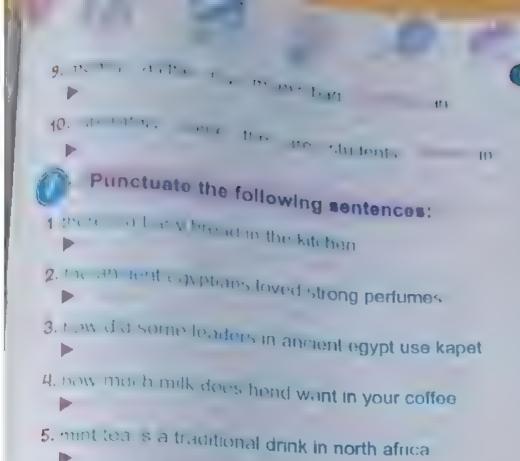
- 1. To clean their teeth.
- 2. To keep their moult's free half day.
- 3. Egypt is famous for its spices
- 4. We don't only use spices to look food
- 5. What did some leaders

- a) that are used in home cooking and restaurants.
- b) in Ancient Egypt use kapet for
- c) the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.
- d) when you were asleep
- e) we also use them in perfume and medicine.
- f) Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush.

## 6

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. eat to Egyptians well liked Ancient.
- 2. the need lemons for We a few recipe.
- 3. my like a lot of l tea milk in.
- 4. spices to food We cook use.
- 5. sold stores are Spices in.
- 6. Egypt Tourists when they souvenirs buy visit.
- 7. pepper in it salt had Their toothpaste and.
- 8. bowl there the any Is butter in?



- 6. to you always brush your teeth
- > jour teeling
- 7. no am not going to brush my teeth
- 8. omar works in a bakery next to our house

#### Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- 1. This recipe is (famous well known secret). No one knows it.
- 2. You should (press squeeze push) lemons to make lemon juice.
- 3. (Heat Press Squeeze) the wax to melt it.
- 4. Tourists buy (souvenirs tickets foods) to remember their visit to Egypt.
- 5. I always wash my hands with water and (shampoo cream soap).
- 6. Egypt s famous for its (spaces species spices) that are used for cooking.
- 7. Laila's perfume (sme is tastes feels) nice.
- 8. Can you (poor pour power) me a cup of tea, please?

Connect 6 ⊢

47



# (GRAMMAR REVIEW)

## Choose the correct answer:

- 1. From ( ) is a community of the commun
- 3. Herry apt We dent have to my stery much, a
- 4. I meed (a allow town many) cups or , 's
- 5. We need some demons polatoes, apply to the unit
- 6. There are a (the many few) and, to along tem?
- 8. Would you like (some a few mary, man office)
- 9. Are there quarry a little a let) one in the first of
- 10. There is (many a few much) team the up
- 11. There (are is was) some orange on the parte
- 12. There (is are were) oran je juice in the jui
- 13. There is (some a few many) choose or che plate
- 14. There are (a lot many a few) of a statistical true town

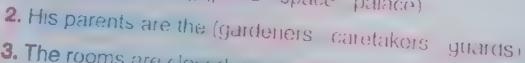
## Unit 6 Francis



نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

# Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Peter lives in a big (place space palace)



3. The rooms are closed and serious mysterious previous)

(3Ms)



# Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1. Faspt is famous for its
- 2. They are used in hemo cooling and

all across the country.

3. Special combinations of different query color as ecret ingredient in many



## Choose the correct answer:

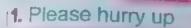
(4Ms)

- 1. Egypt is (famous astonished clever organized) for its spices
- 2. Ancient Egyptians made (mint papyrus wood perfume) candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.
- 3. There are some (honey spices juice salt) in the jar
- 4. There (isn't aren't weren't wasn't) any milk in the fridge now



## Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)



2. Can I have a little

3. How many candles does

4. How much handework

5. How many brothers and sisters

- a) 450 grams of wax make?
- b) did you do yesterday?
- c) some types of minerals.
- d) do you have?
- e) we don't have a lot of time.
- f) sugar in my coffee, please?



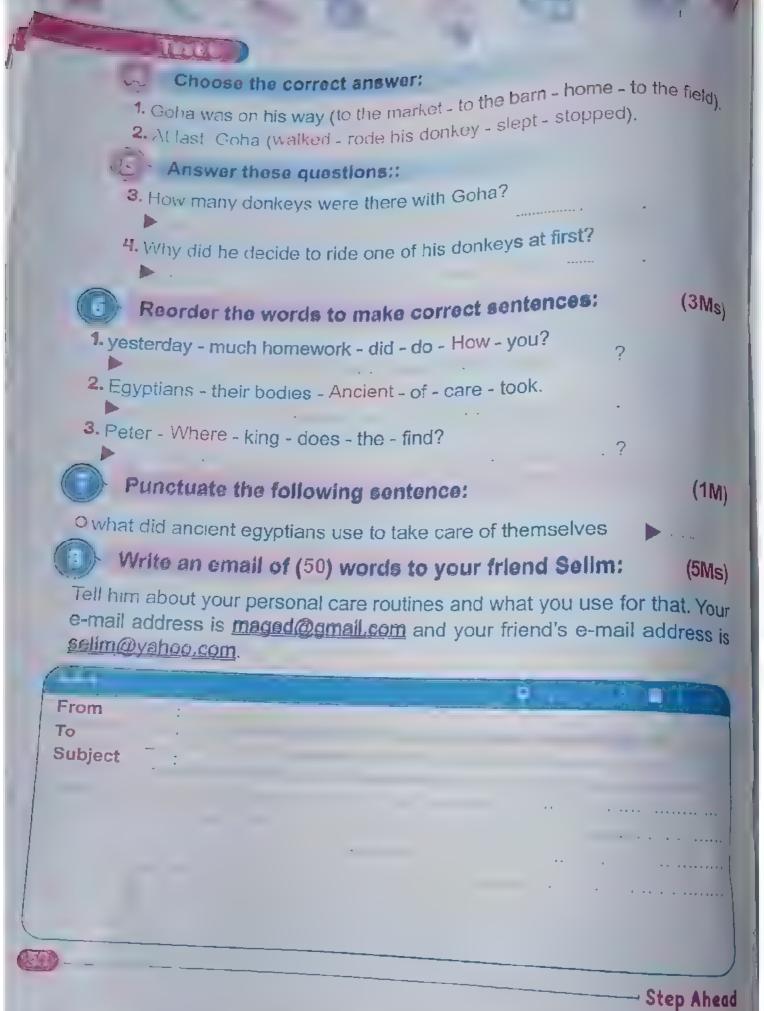
#### Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Goha used to go to the village market to ser donkeys. One day, on his way home with his donkeys, he felt thed. He dearly dito ride one of his donkeys. He counted the donkeys but their records nine. He got off his dankey and counted them again. This tiple there were fund He got back on his donkey and counted them one, more He was surprised. There were only nine. He decided to get of his a piery. He preferred to walk with ten donkeys rather man ride with a ne-

Connect 6.

Canificanne y way say



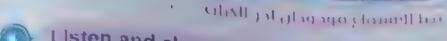


## Revision Tosts

### Revision Total









(3M-)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Min Forest is a an (community company or paid don shor). 2 These special green areas nelp people enjoy (Less - prople - cities -

3. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the (worst - biggest - best smallest) urban locations for our forest.



## Listen and complete the sentences:



(3Ms)

1. When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a

2. in the north, where the Nile opens into the Delta, it is wide.

3. in the south, where it passes between desert

, it is narrow.



### Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. Mr Anmed is such a (nervous - shy - helpful - mossy) teacher. He always answers all of our extra questions.

2. My birthday is (in - on at - from) August 1st.

3. How (many - much - old - often) sugar do you want in your cup?

4. There's a (way - road - street - railway) line near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.



#### Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

1. Does your garden produce vegetables?

...

2. The weather is usually

3. I'm hanging up the streamers,

4. Little Deer runs

5. New York has a lot

a) can you help me?

b) of green spaces.

c) Yes, it did.

d) sunny in Egypt in summer.

e) Yes, it does.

f) through the forest.

Connect 6 -





## Read the text and answer the questions:

In the north and a second were poor and life was different to it they were the state of the state of an arten buildings it is a real to a restance to But the construction for to e. t. Lie wear c. th, cirranal quiet. They had the to pray the rather time to time to est They had the tollish and speak with each other fitters life in the past was harper the creeteday

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Life was (easy quiet bad nor v) in the past.
- 2. People were
- Answer these questions::
  - 3. Where did people live in the past?
  - 4. Was there a metro in the past?



#### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1. a lot of buy products care - personal :-
- 2. to Do my house -- you -- come -- want this
- 3. like fast Ma . . food eating doesn t



#### Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o do you like reading books



Write a text of ( ) words using the following elements:

"How did Ancient Egyptians like to be clean?"

perfumes - toothbrush - toothpaste - clean



## Revision 1





# Listen and choose the correct answer:



(3Ms)

- Alany of the (products cur- bikes planes) we use today for personal are were first used in Ancient Egypt.
- The most popular (shampuo loothpaste perfume decidorant) was called
- & Kapet was (cheap expersion duty not expensive).



## Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

- Ma en sistudying hard for his at the moment.
- Mazen is not spending all his free time with his nose in a
- s. ' on goes every morning in the park.



#### Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- What did you (ate - ) yesterday?
- 2. Cats have ( - ) claws and teeth. Don't make them angry.
- 3. She is (wears wore . . . ) a white dress.
- 4. Char's very (not. 3- - ... : dy). He always helps people

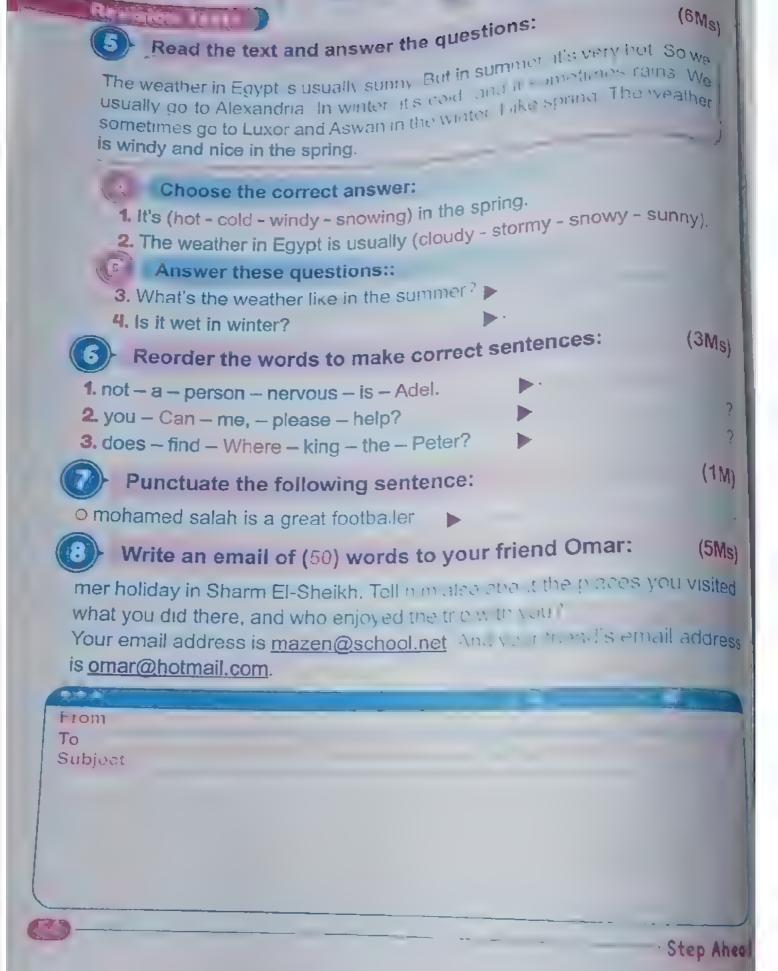


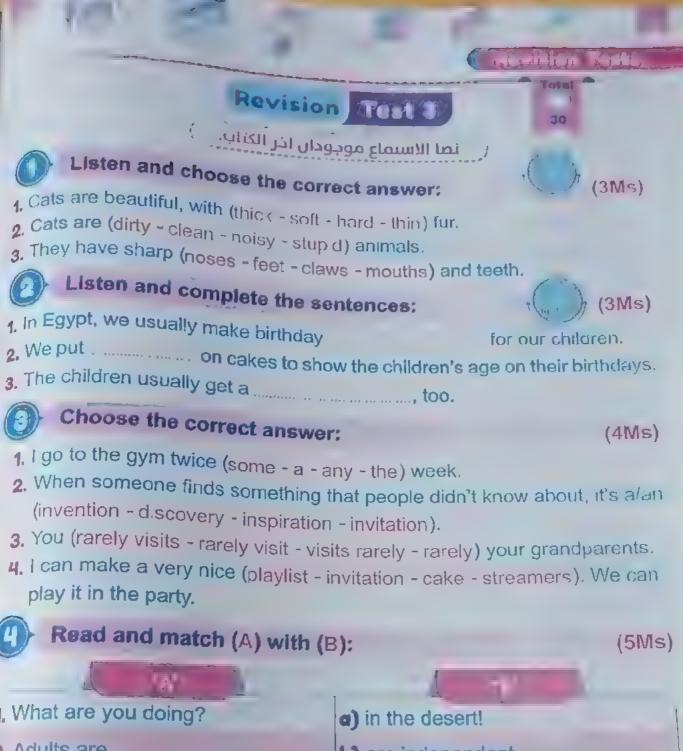
#### Read and match ( ) with ( ):

(5Ms)

- 1. The And ent Egyptians loved
- 2 . n .roh oil do we need?
- 3. I makaged spices are one of the
- 4. In take you around
- 5. if you press the button,

- a) favorite souvenirs that tourists buy.
- b) the tablet switches off.
- c) No, we don't.
- d) strong perfumes.
- e) and stay with you at break.
- f) We just need 200 grams of oil.





- 1. What are you doing?
- 2. Adults are
- 3. You can go quad biking
- 4. Let's climb the
- 5. Cats like people, but they

- b) are independent.
- c) Cairo.
- d) fully grown people, not children.
- e) Bab Zuweila minaret.
- f) I'm hanging up the streamers.

Connect 6



Read the text and answer the questions:

Kamel is a farmer. He works hard in his held. When the sun rises, he goes to his wall to his wall. to his held. He grows different kinds of fruit and vegetables. He hopes he will he of will be able to buy a cart and a donkey to ride it to his field and back home. It takes him an hour to walk to his field. He is kind to everyone in his village. He has a son and a daughter. His wife helps him with his work



### Choose the correct answer:

1. He grows different kinds of fruit and (metal - gold - vegetables - sculptures)

2. Kamel goes to his work in the (morning - afternoon - evening - night).



### Answer these questions::

3. What does Kamel hope?

4. What does he grow?



### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. do - eat - cheese - you - How often?

2. didn't - My dad - to - nis work - go - yesterday.

3. She - to - club - goes - the - sometimes



#### Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o no i don t like these toys



Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"Having fun at the community garden"

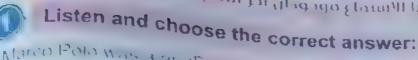


plant - green spaces - neighborhood tomatoes - peppers - fresh food



# Revision Total

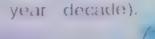
ted Humply opening tee Halis.



(3Ms)

1. Marco Polo was san (Egyptian French Italian - British) explorer 2. Marco Poro was one of the first people from the West to visit (Egypt -

3. He went there in the 13th (century - day year decade).



(3Ms)

Listen and complete the sentences: 1. When you brush your hair, I spreads the natural your skin through your nair.

from

2. The natural oils protects your hair from heat and

3. The natural oils makes your hair look

and healthy.



## Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. They are blowing up some (streamers - balloons - invitations - fireworks) for the party.

2. (Are - Am - Is - Do) they having fun in the garden?

3. We can ask Tamer to (send - make - hang - blow) a playlist.

4. We have (a little - a few - many - much) oranges. We can't make juice for everyone.



### Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

1. If we book the tour today

2. Are there any

3. I have some perfume oil

4. My triend Nadino is hierarly and kind d) signa?

5. I am writing to hvite you to

a) ponks on the table?

b) this next's Mother's Day celebration.

c) it's cheaper

e) Everyone loves her

f) It smells lovely.

Connect 6 -

westlons:	(GMs,
Read the text and answer the questions:  The formulation of the properties of anywher the properties of anywher the properties of anywher the properties of anywher that the properties of anywher the properties of the properties	re in a plans lso the safe
1. Strest cane was ( maller shorter) than the plant of th	ne toda
Reorder the words to make correct sentences:	(3Ms)
1. storning - for - exams - my - I m - hard - at the moment.  2. Eng sn - my school - favorite - subject - is.  3. tree - up - We - climb - this - can.	-
Punctuate the following sentence:	(1M <sub>)</sub>
O do you like reading books	
Write an email of (50) words to your friend Amr:	(5Ms)
aces Marco explored and some information you liked about Marco. Your email address is osama@school.net. And your friend's email address is amr@hotmail.com.	
From	
To Subject	
Step Aheod	

Can Scanne ix war require

## Revision ( City ed Amart pagrepring let Helle.



## Listen and choose the correct answer:

( 11VI-)

- 4. The Ancient Egyptians, tool is a track revenue to the second of the s 2. The water of the (sea - canal Nile Inter to the City of the or fund
- 3. They grew onions, with the digital or apple there is the control of the contro



## Listen and complete the sentences:

(101.)

- 1. Urban greening is an a set of partial award named in as in.
- 2. Urban greening means continuate of a modification that
- 3. Urban greening can be an and between factor or garden conpeople's



## Choose the correct answer:

(4M=)

- 1.(How often How much How many However) do you play toothall with your friends?
- 2. Let's (arrive plan climb jumps in the properties
- 3. Saad is a boy in my class (which who where how) the north how full mark.
- 4. (Perfume Cooking Water Wassing Cooking Water Wassing Cooking Water Wassing Cooking Cooking



### Read and match (A) with (B):

(5|V(5)

- 1. Where does Salwago > 1 c c
- 2. to 15 MIC W 5
- 3. Our apartment is in the expense.
- 4. Please w ... L.k.
- 5. We are inviting theory of the

- a) to be de un touth
- at a sample the Ы
- d) She's going to the cinoma.
- e) and the thirt high
- 1) 450 grams of wax.

#### Total Revision Beats Listen and choose the correct answer: (. 14 percent work with to, an communities to plant and look after the communities and look after the communities and look after the communities are communities to plant and look after the communities are communities and communities are communities are communities and communities and communities are communities and communities are communities are communities are communities are communities are communities and communities are communities are communities are communities are communities and communities are communities are communities are communities. or or order rom overv forest we plant a in times a month a providen have enough; and or odi projects Listen and complete the sentences: (31Mis) 1. 10 11 अर 100 gives other people information about your cersonality. g Each person has a way of moving 3. People who move in similar ways often become and work well todether Choose the correct answer: (4IVIS) 1. (The . - .5 ...... - Are there - There is) any decitor in your class?

- 2 The tourists (s \_\_\_\_\_ acesn't speak didn't speak speak) Italian They spoke English.
- 3. think the tools are in the (sned snade bed gate) of the garden
- 4, Cats have (a literated nord tough) für which is nice to touch.



#### Read and match ( :) with (B):

(5Ns)

1. There are
 2. Excited about curvicace
 3. Went on a felucca
 4. Sine eating seafood?
 5. Local people called the Gobi Desert (e) to Alexan mal.

Connert &-

Read the text and answer the questions:

Coffee is the most lavorite drink in many countries today. I in high grow discovered it the most favorite drink in many countries in Ethiopia, Prople discovered it the parties of the world. Deflet grew first in Ethiopia, Prople discovered it there more than 1000 years to countries. Then the nor in Turkey to the posterior gypt and that the prople in Turkey learned about coffee. The first of the shop in London was opened in 1652

## Choose the correct answer:

1. he have the world farmers)

2 People : consultation one hundred - thousand - million . century) years ago.

## Answer these questions::

4. The look cores to father

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. palace - a - lives - Peter - big - in.

2. Do - like - you - perfumes - using?

S. works - dad - in - a - factory - My.

Punctuate the following sentence:

ony mendarana wenton cup

Write an email of (50) words to your friend Nadia:

(5Ms) Tour ner about nour your spend your in the term. Your email address is nadia@school.net. And your friend's email address is salma@hotmail.com

1110111 To Subject

## Revision Town A destruction of the state of t Listen and choose the correct answer: 1. I'm with my (friend) courses - I muly - a der a) at the course d ( IM: ) 2. There are amazing rides like the (Orent Iran Telephone) 3. There are places to (swim - eat dame sand) and stores too

## Listen and complete the sentences:

(JIVI)

- 1. There is a and a playing field in our school
- 2. There are also benches to
- 3. Children can also on under the tree plants with Mr Mahdl

## Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 4. My birthday party was (boring bored exerted exerted) breeze use
- 2. My family (go went goes is going) on vacation last year.
- 3. He wants to go out with his friends, (and so because but) he has a
- 4. Can you (make hang up let off blow up) some balloons?

## Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

- 11. The new green spaces
- 2. There's a big park near the river
- 3. Amal wants to see
- 4. Marco Polo went on a long
- 5. We are proud

- a)) of our school.
- b) voyage by sea.
- c) I'm fine.
- d) help people and animals.
- e) all the famous places in Aswan.
- f) I often go there.



#### Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

They to the term of the term of the park on the park of the park of the park of the park of the perpendicular to the park of t



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The common term of the (people) parks of ldren flowers).
- 2. The name of the grass ground park bins)



#### Answer these questions::

- 3. h. reed people we male post?
- 4. Was there a metro in the past?



## Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1. the comist you go to How do often?
- 2. here to surprised see you I'm!
- 3. in uncle a hospital works My.



#### Pt Pt

## Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o he s going to aswan on thursday



## Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

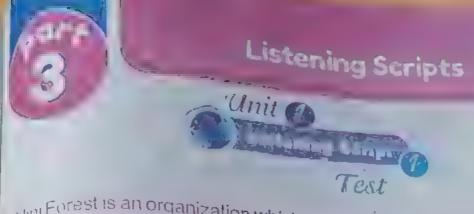
"After-school activities"



do homework - watch TV - go to the club have dinner - go to bed



64



Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle crost cities. These special green areas help people enjoy is true, as the property wildlife like plants, animals and other living things.

## Test \*

rom just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of pagetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends.

Ouestion



Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculate how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

## Test

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the Farth is now too not. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring.



If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can remember better in the afternoon, it's helpful if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

#### Test

It is Tuesday and the girls are at Bab Zuweila. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."



In your last email you ask me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing Everything Ancient Egypt but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader! i'm enjoying it. I love history books - and the documentary is good, too.

Question

### Test

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn.



A team of archaeologists went to the area of Nok to find out more. They to the area of Nok to find out more. They have these were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists and BCE to 200 CE.

Ouestion

## Test

Latening Dalipe.

preakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: he says that tomorrow the weather will be good with no wind.



palace is old and no one lives there now. A lot of the rooms are closed and mysterious.

## Test

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret maredient in many recipes.

Question



Ment areas in a men plants of areas help middle of our of a wildlar all to the model of ways work areas for our forests

en areas help people enjoy nature
ways work hard to find the beginning



(When you see it from the in the connection where the National Connection of the whole it parises between the control of the connection of

Ottestien

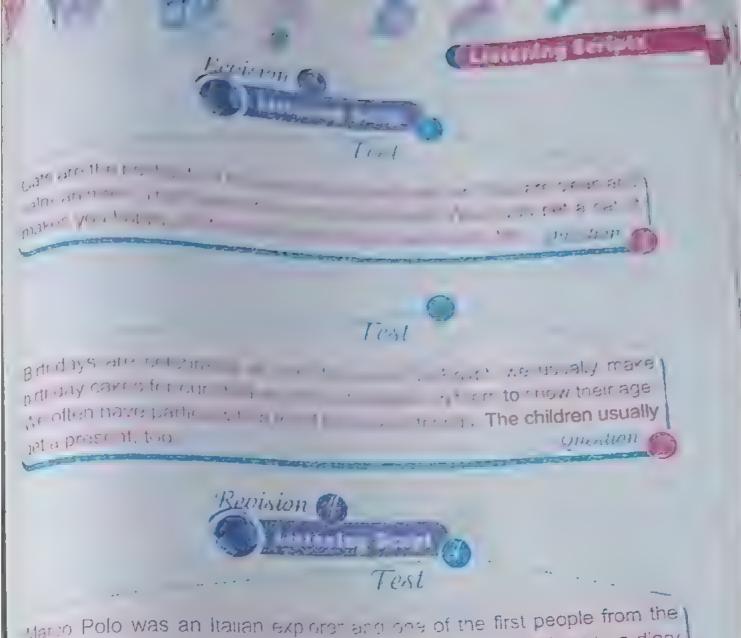


Many of the products we use the first used in Ancient Egypt. The Ancient Lovport to a completiones. The most popular perfume was called looped to be belief.

## Test 0

Hello everyone! I'm Mazen. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending till any transmitte my nose in a book! I know it's important to get outside and local and exercise too, so I go running every morning in the park. Lalso Exceed to a context and exercise with my dad.





Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the Mest to visit China. He went there in the 13th contury and wrote a diary accut his experiences. It's called The Travels of Marco Polo. Question



When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and out and makes it looks shiny and heat...



The Ancient Fovotions took care of their bodi and ate very well! "

Otto Hon

03

#### Test

It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be area parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.



We usually work with ocal communities to plant and look after the forests of the total from every forest we plant a few times a month. We rarely the total from every forest we plant a few times a month. We rarely the total from every forest we plant a few times a month. We rarely the total from every forest we plant a few times a month. We rarely the total from every forest we plant and look after the forests are look afte

## Test

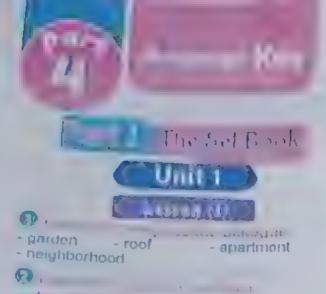
The way you move gives other people information about your personality Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own har awating. People who move in similar ways often become friends and the well together.

Question



Carristanne a way say





- Choose the correct answer: 1- anartment 1 v. funteers 1 mot for the time one of the tree t a maghhorhood
- Read and complete the text: as agon icus . ) aunt 3) root al Spl strola (o 8) fue ids
- G R 11. W. 1. 17. . ) es Mariam go on Fridays?
- 2- I always help my aunt on Fridays. 3- We grow vegetables to eat,
- 4. Do you want to come to my house?
- 5- We sell them in the market, 6- What things do you grow?
- © Princtuate the following sentences:
- 1 Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Fridays.
- 2- It's on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.
- 3- We usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce.
- 4- Where does Mustafa go on Tuesdays?
- 5- Does your family have a garden?

Write an small of (50) words. From: farida@hotmail.com

To: basma@gmail.com Subject: Our community

I hope you're doing well. I wanted to share with you what we're doing in our community o make it cleaner and more beautiful We the volunteers, plant vegetables like tomatoes, peppers onlons, and lettuce in our Mini Forest garden. It's

amazing to see it grow and pro to coften food for everyone Our neighborhond now greener and healthler! Lots of love Forda

Copeni(2 Rend and complete the fe .. 1) organization 2) nature 3) wildlife 4) forest

Road the text and action the question 2 Tately 7 They work together to plant and lock

ator the fere as tony plant over time 4. They need more valunteers to join them

Direct and complete the dialogue Dictions 2) Spaces 3) to sture 4) voluntaers

d choose the some of answer 3- How often 2- often 1- usually 5- sometimes

4- never 8- often 7 - never 6 ratery

9- sometimes 10 rarely

13 rarely goes 11 always 12 never 15 doesn't

14 usually play 16 How 1/- HIOW 18- play

20- does 19- don't

21- never goes 22- is never

24- often 25- never rains 26- are always

28- usually visit 27- often

30- is rarely 29- often takes

6 Reorder the words:

1- I'm usually in bed before 10 pm

2- My dad always eats a healthy breakfast in the morning.

3- Donia and Wael are never late for school.

4- How often do you go to the dentist?

5- Our teacher sometimes gives us homework on weekends.

6- It rarely rains in the Western Desert.

heison (3)

Read and match (A) with (B): 1-0 2-f 3 b 4-e 5-d

Read and match (A) with (B): 1 c 2 g 3 b 4-a 5-d

Read and complete the text: spaces - reate - famous - neighborhood

Rend and complete with "th" or "a" peed - sick - think / throw - thirsty sand

@ Read the text and enewer the questions: 2- bequilful 1. The giant lives in a village, in the

countryside.

Country come to play in the giant's quirden

@ Realder the words,

New York has a lot of group spaces 2. Our apartment is on the fifth floor. 2. You can walk through the gardens New York is a very noisy city. 4- There aren't many parks in New York. 6. The lovely garden makes the children The grant dves in a village there are tall trees in the garden.

punctuate the following sentences: What is Wael's favorite place in New York? 2. No. I don't want any more candy.

3. Let's have a picnic in the park north of

4. Can you give me the blue crayon. please?

Write a text of (50) words:

"A visit to Alexandria" Last summer, my parents took me to Aexandria. We want to a lot of restaurants and had a lot of fun. We also went to the Alexandria library, which was really cool. I learned a lot about the history of Alexandria there. I had a really happy time In Alexandria, and I can't wait to go back someday.

Lessons (4&5) Read and match (A) with (B): 1-8 2-a 3-f 4-b 5-c

? Read and complete the text: 1) apartment 2) floor 3) street 4) view

Reorder the words:

1-How are things with you?

2-Our apartment is in the city center.

1-We have a great view over the trees.

4-People use the park for meeting friends.

6-Scottish people love eating porridge.

6- I have a lot of new friends

Punctuate the following sentences:

1- I'm finally in Scotland

2- What does she miss about Egypt? 3- She lives in London, the capital of

4- What's your favorite subject, Nahla? 5- I eat Scottish food, but Egyptian food is botter.

S Write an email of (50) words:

From: fares@gmail.com To: haniceyahoo com

Subject: My new life in England

Hi Hani,

How are things? I hope you're doing well. Guess what? I'm now living in England! It's a big change from Egypt, but I'm getting used to it. There are so many new things to see and do here. I miss the weather and the Egyptian food a lot, I can't find any good koshari or ful medames here! Anyway, I hope to hear back from you soon.

Best wishes, Fares

#### Test (1) on unit (1)

"خاص بالأزهر الشريف"

U Listen and choose the correct word: 1 - cities 3- forest 2- nature

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- apartment 2- view

3 Choose the correct word (s): 2- often

1- usually goes 3- Is always 4- a

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

2- volunteers 1- garden

3- They usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce.

4- This year, they have lemons and dates.

5 Reorder the words:

1- We grow vegetables to eat.

2- How often do you see your friends?

3- What do you usually do at Sham El Nessim?

#### to the following sentence: o go to the club on Monday.

n email of (50) words.

From trundy@school 1 To yousetarbolinal wan Subject. The summer holiday Dear Yousef,

Guess what? I had an amazing summer trip to a super cool village! There were so many different plants, like colorful flowers and tall sunflowers. I even sow cute farm animals. like sheep and cows. But the best part was meeting the friendly people who lived there They were so nice and told me all about their village. I had the best time ever! I can't wait to hear about your summer trips, too see you soon!

Best wishes. Magdy

#### Test (2) on unit (1)

to the and choose the correct word. - village 2- trees 3- afternoon

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- community 2- neighborhood

3- vegetables

3 Choose the correct word (s):

1- usually goes 2- a

3- often 4- are rarely

Read and match (A) with (B): 1-c 2-f 3-d 4-a 5-b

Read the text and answer the questions:

1-less 2- smaller

3- It refers to the great forests of the world.

4. If there forests disappear, it is slimite of the world will change.

Reorder the words;

1- What things do you grow?

2- Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

3- Wael's family lives in a tall building.

Punctuate the following sentence: · Are Dina and Yasmin good at planting Irees?

Write a text of (50) words:

med their trees for the continue to partie and with the state of tike to read b parks. It's imp Next firme your and a second enjoy the war marker profits.

Liesson (1)

Read and complete the dialogue 1- nervous & that I have 4 Care

Read and match (A) with (B); 3- b 2- 8

7- 3 6- g 5- f

Choose the correct answer:

1- helpful 2- funny 3- friendly 4 goor, 5- polite 6- messy 7- nervous 8 km c

9- clever 10- calm 11- shy 12- organ 200

Reorder the words:

1 How thes Hazem toel today?

2- We are all very friendly.

3- I feel a bit nervous.

4- Do you have all your books?

5- We can share my book today.

6- You are really organized.

7 Hr shows respect to everyone

8- She has long hipok hair

Punctuate the following sentences:

1. We middles Baser offer to share with his friend?

2- School starts in September.

3- Do you have all your books yet. Hazem?

4- I don't go to school on Friday or Saturday.

5- How does Mustafa feel today?

Write an email of (50) words:

From: malak@gmail.com

To: aliaa@gmail.com

Subject: My first day at school Dear Aliaa.

I pe you're doing we wanted to te you acout my first cay at school 1 was a sit nervous at first, but I made new triend,

Brisel was really nice, and we shared pooks The teachers are very kind. M as Anned, who teaches English, is funny. Mr. Ahmed, who teaches science, has short hlack hair, and he is very helpful. It and to hear about your first day at tots of love, Maiak

O Read and match (A) with (B):

Read and complete the dialogue

3- equipment 4- open area

Read and complete the text: 1. area 2- break 3- benches 4- fountain

O Choose the correct answer:
1. who 2- which 3- where

4- which 5- where 6- who 7- which 8- which 9- where 11- who 12- which

6 choose the correct answer:

2- surprising 3- bored
4- bored 5- exciting 6- excited
7- interested 8- interesting 9- tired
10- tiring

Reorder the words:

1. We are proud of our modern buildings.
2. This is a large open area.

where do you study Arabic?

4-I'm surprised to see you!

5- She is interested in science.

6. He loves using laptops all the time.

7- English is my favorite school subject.
8-Who is your math teacher?

8-Milo is Aodi matil teacher?

Or \_\_\_\_ ene the following sentences.

i. raieem is a clever boy.

2. Do you like your school, Amgad?

3-Who is your math teacher?

4- My parents take me to the park every friday.

5- When does Manal wake up for school?



Read and write in the correct column:

/æ/ sound track - hat - mat - bag - angry animal - happy

/ sound: cut - truck - hungry - brush duck - nuts - funny

2 Round the numbers:

1) 2 2) 13 3) 1 4) 5 5) 25 6) 19 7) 8 8) 42 9) 32 10) 87

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

1- 22 2- a little

3- The students need 2 cans of paint to paint the walls. 4- They will have at least 20 liters of paint left over.

4 Reorder the words:

1- The weather is sunny today.

2- Something is moving inside the house.

3- Who is inside the house?

4- Hare runs to the forest.

5- There's an animal in my house.

6- Elephants are afraid of micel

7- Hare hears a noise inside her house.

5 Write a text of (50) words:

"An interesting story I read"
I read an interesting story about a brave
young girl and her brave adventures. I read
it last week before bedtime. The main
characters are Lily and a talking dragon
named Spark. I liked Spark the most
because he helped Lily solve problems.
The story was full of excitement and
surprises!

1 Read and complete the text:

1- pets 2- soft 3- friendly 4- walk

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- pets 2- soft 3- independent

4- sharp 5- pet

3 Reorder the words:

1- Cats are my favorite animals.

2- Fish are the best pets.

3- Soft fur is nice to touch.

4- I love to keep my pet clean.

5- Cats have sharp claws and teeth.

6- Hany writes about his favorite pet.

7- Dogs are very friendly pets.

8- Why do people love to keep pets?

9- We want to go to the beach.

10- Dalia is clever and polite.

### Punctuate the following sentences:

1- This is Arwa's lovely pet.

2- No, we don't need to go to the school on Saturday.

3- Mohamed Salah is a famous footballer.

4- What's your favorite animal?

5- Those aren't my shoes.

#### Write a text of (50) words:

"My favorite pet"

My favorite pet is a cat. It oats cat food and sometimes fish. It sleeps on a nice bed in my room. I pet it softly and play with it using toys. The good things about having a pet are the company and tun it brings, but I need to clean up after it. In total, I love my cat because it bring love to his te

#### Test (3) on unit (2)

"خاص بالأزهر الشريب"

Listen and choose the correct answer:

1- where 2- benches 3- plants

Read and complete the dialogue:

1 interesting 2 is a brave

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- where 2- surprising 3- who 4- but

Read the text and answer the questions:

2- fur

3- Because hey are beautiful with soft fur. and they are clean, calm and friendly animals.

4- Cats use their sharp class and teeth when they are scared.

#### 6 Reorder the words:

1- How does Hazem feel today?

2- Which school subjects do you like?

3- My new school is great.

6 Punctuate the following sentence: Yes, we are going to the soo on Thursday.

## Write an email of (50) words:

"My school" My school is big and has many classrooms, laboratories, and a gymnasium I go to school every morning. I'm never late for simoul. . like going to school because I meet my friends and play

n the pen a a and population, i, Is now to a fee they ten were and my talpful B. Horpt to rand can are at tressel

## - Test (9) on unit (2)

Tisten and choose the correct word Learnity 2 Learning

DListen and complete the sentences 1- science 2- laboratories 3- experiment

13 Choose the correct answer: 1 who 2 where 3-interested 4 which

Read and match (A) with (B): 3 b 4 a 5 c 1 f 2 e

S Read the text and answer the questions,

2- famous

3- It refers to fish.

4- You should love and care for it, and you have to feed it.

#### To Reorder the words:

1- These are the shoes which I wear to school.

2- What does Amr like?

3- Children can grow plants with Mr. Mahdi.

Punctuate the following sentence: What's the weather like in Egypt in January?

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: sarah@gmail.com To: hagar@gmail.com Subject: My school

Hi Hagar!

I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you about my school and the classrooms we have. We have different rooms for different subjects like math, science and English In the science lab, we do fun experiments, and in the art room, we paint and draw.

Outside, we have a big playground with swings and slides. During break, I usually play footbail with my friends. It's so much fun! We also have an open area with beautiful flowers and benches where we sit and chat

neel up soon and share more of lovel



O Road and match ( ) with (B):

producemplets the dialogue

p. he of the correct answer

expected 3) by 4) quad being

O Peartier the words:

in the diabout our vication in a set the Manual Palace

we say to guad biking in the desert

princtuate the following sentences:

tearre interesting places in Cairo?

The to Charm E. Shetkh on Monday.

The conjugation of the capture of the c

@wntc an email of (50) words:

on at it a qmail com
on the first school not
street My vacation
the tribul

reproporting doing great! I just got back in an awasome vacation, and I can't get to tell you all about it. I visited some was places. First, went to the pack and built sandcastles. The waves much fun to play in! Then, I went to the mountains and saw beautiful median. It was like a magical forest! I so went to the zoo and saw lions, where and elephants. I had the best

#### Answer Key

time ever and east wait to hear about your adventures too!

At wishing

O Read and . . . . . . .

1- try 2- have 3- concentrate 4- work

1- eat 2- remember 3- write

1 Read and complete the

1) door 2) panel

3) dictionary 4) social media

1) When 2) if 3) choose 4) switches
5) 5 1 2 when
1 think on 17) but 18) doesn't work
19) can't buy 20) tries

G Choose the correct word:

1- In 2- at 3- on 4- in 5- on 8- on 7- on 8- at 9- in 10- in

Reorder the words

1- Study for about 30 minutes but no longer

2. We can be out, our fresh to

4 We had a green to the this product

5. How do you can germate during study time?

6- Can we go to the city by bus?

Punctuate the following sentences:

11 Mom, there', 3 problem, with the freezer

Mrs Manal lettins use per ons in the test

(3) We had a math class on Sunday.

He went on a trip to Hurghada in October.

5 Which city do you like to live in, Giza or Alexandra?

in the state of th

1- (e) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (n) 5 (d)

Read and complete the text.

1) cous n 2) As war (1) temps s 4) Dome

/v/ (volcano- violin - vogatables - vet - veil) /w/ (water - wolf - window - west - worm)

Rend the text and mawer.

1- afraid

2- fentastic

3- They see the view of the city

4- Amal helped Fatima to feel calmer. She took her hand and amiles

S Reorder the words:

1- I want to see all the famous places

2- Amai shows Fatima a photo.

3- Little Deer runs through the forest

4- There's a great view from therei

5- He doesn't know what to say.

B. She wants to make everyone happy.

7- I don't want to disappoint you.

8- Bear has a drink from the river.

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to

2- What's the weather like on Sunday?

3- How much does it cost?

4- I don't like reading

5- Yes give me some water, please

6- He's a claver boy

7- No she isn't good at painting

1- It is Amal's first time in Aswan

Lessons (485)

i the nalogue

1) birthday

2) fantasy

3) rollercoaster

4) present

Read and complete the text:

1) theater 2) screens 3) effects 4) realistic

Read the text and answer:

1- brave 2- interestina

3- Tamer is at the Carnival with his family.

4- They are at the Carnival because it is Tamer's special birthday surprise.

Reorder the words:

1- I'm at the Carnival with my family.

2- There are a lot of shows and concerts.

3- I don't like rollercoasters.

4- Did you enjoy your time with Talia?

5- We have tickets for the waterfalls.

6- I want to go to the simulation theater.

(3) Punctuato

to by control that the curpost at the

you can't eat my burgers

de la particular de d' comments and the second of the contraction of the c

O v. : I v 'A transfer of the

Enalth held by dlin am call for wa ed alor to be the most oracling redictions for could broade us seam and laugh with juy and the digithen we hopped on the Circuit Is un and saw cool thrace After that, we went to a simulation trader, and it felt like I was inside a moviet We even got to see magical waterfalls. I mad so much fun playing games, tool

Test (5) on unit (3)

U Listen and choose:

1- first 2- climb up

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

2- Dome 1- vacation

3 Choose the correct answer:

2- at 3- help 1- goes

Read the text and answer:

2- home

3- "They" refers to Ahmed and Eman.

4- Eman likes playing computer games in her free time. She also likes watching TV

6 Reorder the words:

1- She is afraid of heights.

2- Wolf has a drink from the lake.

3- What are your tips for studying?

**6** Punctuate the following sentence: Should Tamer go quad biking on Wednesday?

7 Write an email of (50) words:

From: menna@yahoo.com

To: shaza@hotmail.com

Subject: Getting ready for midterm tests Hi Shaza,

I hope you're doing well! I wanted to tell you how I study for midterm tests. I make a timetable for each subject, take breaks between sessions, and ask for help when → Step Anead

good at Arabic or good and math, but not good at Arabic or science. Lors

### Test (6) on unit (3)

O Listen and choose:

Carnival 2- rollercoaster 3-thoaters

D Listen and complete the sentences: 1. birthday 2- Camival 3- rollercoaster

O Choose the correct answer: 2- can't 3- goes 4- on

@ Read and match (A) with (B): (e) 2-(d) 3-(a) 4-(f) 5-(b)

@ Read the text and answer: smallest 2- expensive . Fady wrote this email 4. The restaurants in Sharm El-Sheikh ave fantastic and delicious food, but it sn't cheap.

Reorder the words;

1. When do you get up on school days? Latis go to the theme park and ride on a 3- Suddenly, she · ercoaster! ...sn't feel scared anymore.

🙀 Рипсtuate:

ra ma's favorite cousin Amal comes to sther in Aswan.

8 Write a text of (50) words:

"A visit to Cairo Tower" ext weekend, I went to Cairo Tower with m, igm ly. We had so much fun! We ate ... by Egyptian food at the tower's esta frant. From the top, we saw the to all fill city and famous places like the River Nile and the Pyramids. It was an area ing experience! I had so much fun.



Lesson (1) Read and match (A) with (B):

3- (b) 4- (e) 2- (f)

Choose the correct answer:

1 Freworks 2) playlist.

#### Answer Kay

4) atring 5) decorating 6) honging 7) blow up 8) make

 Read and complete the dialogue: hanging string - balloons birthday

Roorder the words:

1- Will you come to my birthday party?

2- t don't like the chocolate cakes

3. My mom decorates all the cakes

4- My brother is blowing up the balloons

5- Did you lot off the fireworks?

6- Let's play some nice music.

7- Are you sending the invitations?

8- Dalida made a playlist for my party

9 We need an adult to let off the fireworks 10-1 love all my friends.

(5) Punctuate:

(D) What are Nesma's sisters doing?

They don't like carnivals

Q Let's go to Sharm El-Sheikh on Monday

Do you enjoy your vacation?

S No, I can't do this right ποw

© Dalida and Noha are decorating the birthday cake.

Write an email of (50) words:

From: mona@gniail.com To: radwa@yahoo.com Subject: My birthday party

Dear Radwa,

I hope you're doing well! I want to invite you to my birthday party. It's going to be so much fun! I will hang up streamers and balloons. and my older brother will let off the fireworks. The party will be at my house on Saturday at 7 pm. I'll send you more details soon. I can't wait to celebrate with you! Lots of love, Mona

Lesson (2 TRead and match (A) with (B):

3-(e) 4-(b) 5-(d) 2- (a)

Choose the correct answer:

1- are 2- Is not 3- are not 4- They 5- is 7- aren't 8- studying 9- Are / Lam 10- doing 11- helping 12- is working

13 is 14- going up 15- are 16- practicin 17- am not 18- are 19- are playing 20- ar 21- are eating 22- trying 23- are having fur

24- Is 25- are cycling

#### Reorder the words:

- Ti We is traying the decorations today
- .") Are they playing a game?
- 3) I'm wearing a new hat.
- 4) Ahmed is eating some cakes
- 5) My sisters are cooking some food
- 6) Is your dad takin i photos?
- 7) Latta and Mona are helping their morn

## Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 Muhammad isn't playing basketball
- 2. Trois wearing a wonderful suit
- 3 the area t enjoying our vacation.
- 4- No, I am not happy.
- 5- Is Aliaa eating her sandwich?

### Write a text of (50) words:

"What are I and my family doing these days?" My family and I are doing a lot of things those days. We read books together, play games, and watch movies. We also help each other with housework around the house, like cooking and washing dishes. My mom works from home, so she is always around to help us with our homework. My dad works at the office, but he comes home early most days to spend time with us. We are all really close, and we love spending time together

### Lesson (3)

- Read and complete.
- 1) celebrated 2) candles 3) parties 4) present
- 2 Read and match (A) with (B):
- 2- (c) 3- (b) 1- (a) 4- (e) 5- (d)
- 3 Write the words in the correct column: /e/ (bed-head-shed-bread-pen) /ei/ (cake - train- say- pay- wait)
- Choose the correct answer: 1) main 2) shed 3) saif 4) met 5) pain

## G Read the text and answer:

- 1- blow out 2- candles
- 3- Children everywhere like party food.
- 4- They give the first piece of their birthday cake 6- I want to go to the zoo. to the most important people in their family: thei Read the text and answer:

#### 6 Reorder the words:

- 2- Who do we-usually invite to birthday parties? 3- Children everywhere like party food

- 4- Which birthday tradition is the most interesting 5 Some countries have different birthday food
- 6. How do you calebrate birthdays in your 7. Children like to blow out the candles

## 7 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1. What do we do in Egypt.
- 2. In the USA and Butain, it is usual to give
- presents on birthdays 3. Who gets the first piece of birthday cake
- 4. Flow old are Chinese children when they are born?

### 8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: nada@school.net

To: jane@hotmall.com

Subject: Birthday traditions in Egypt Hi Jane.

In Egypt, we celebrate birthdays with cakes, candles and music. We sing special songs, and the birthday boy or girl blows out candles on a cake, one for each year of their life We have a lot of fun at birthday parties! We play games, eat food, and make lots of noise, it's a great time to celebrate with friends and family. I hope you have a happy birthday soon!

Lots of love. Nada

#### Lessons (4&5)

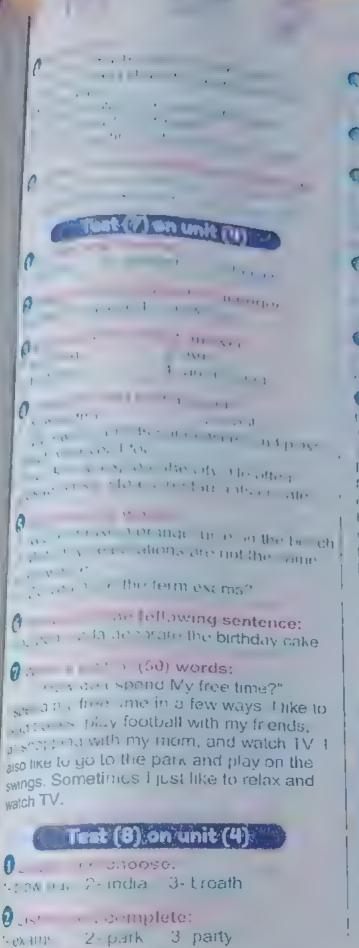
#### Read and match (A) with (B):

1-(d) 2-(c) 3-(b) 4-(a)

#### Reorder the words:

- 1- I invite you to my school's Mother's Day celebration.
- 2- We are organizing a special day.
- 3- We are inviting people from the local community.
- 4- Did you enjoy your time with your friends?
- 5- We have tickets for the party

- 1- invite 2- Sunday
- 1. People often give other people birthday cards
  2. Who do we usually invite to hirthday particle 2.4- Randa asks to receive Mr Ahmed's reply by February 20.



Conne ( --

transmin and The sold the contribution Co min tree 1 we called a profession of the May an tim by distriction In the other chapters entite aller to the section of the section Desprise trupes CV school chizz give on a contrator Chilletinday faption of 10 sale score hal all pro There will be made feed and comes. I want you to come? I allow respond to my ornall ad trees, by A. Gt. E. W. So that I know how many people to expect Lhop⊶ you can make it' Lots of love Jana Unit 5 Lesson (1) Read and match (A) was to 1-(f) 2 (a) 3-(e) 4-(b) Read and complete reading vacation - museum - is/3nd Read the text and answer 1 explorer 3- He went there in the 13th century 4- It's called "The Travels of Marco Polo". Reorder the words 1- I went to Dahab with my grandparents 2- I go to Hurghada with my family.

3- Where was your last trip? 1 T? . I I DE TO CONTENT

to day to refer at all the

. . . . ( ) main to

to say faith to seate n

S Punctuate the following sentences:

(i) The museum had a lot of objects from Ancient Chinn

@ What's your favorite thing about the vacation?

and those my draiks here a dalper please o india in those

- '. s can treatd

G Arte atratof (50) words

How I spent my last vacation" and other least with my grandparents est summe. We staved in a small hold. rant on the water Every Borning, we s. ear can adwent for a swim. The A fer was so want and clear! We built . no astes and played in the water. We so nech fün together, and I can't wait to co back to the beach next summer.

Jesson (2)

Read and match (A) with (B):

2- (f) 3- (a) 4- (b) 6- (e) 7 - (a)

Read and complete the text:

Coerra 2- archaeologists 3- culture 4- clay

Read and complete the dialogue: was - went -- go -- found - weren't -- had

Choose the correct answer:

1) was 2) was 3) weren't 4) were 5) was 6) wasn't 7) Were / was 8) Were / weren't

9) was 10) Was / wasn't

Choose the correct answer:

1-lived 2-tidied 3-brought

5- didn't speak 6- enjoyed 4- blew

7- Did / didn't 8- watched 9- didn't

10- stopped 11- swim / did 12- bought

13- get up 14- Did 15- play

16- came 17- go 18- didn't finish

19- help 20- sleep 21- Did 22- Were

Reorder the words: 1- The sculptures were a lot of mutal

2 Archeologists found a lot of mutal

fick effects, than y fery today. We was a multiplicate from the

e Thomas of minimal defendants

6. Who decovered trescules it objects

7 fm not interested in the Nek avdicator

a My sates didn't like the acidp lines.

g. The Noter ulturn was advanced

13. There earl worten information about the Neb

Punctuate the following sentences

1 Thora was a discovery in the small vill of of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa

.' Can you help me please?

3 Yes should

4. We didn't enjoy our vacation

5. When did Datem have his unch?

6. My parents weren't at the party yesterda,

Write an email of (50) words:

From fayez@yahoo com To. haitham@gmail.com Subject : Last week activities

Dear Haitham,

How are you? And how is your family? I'm writing to tell you about my family's trip to the zoo last week. We had a great time! We saw all sorts of animals, including lions, tigers, bears, elephants, and monkeys. We even fed the giraffes! We also earned a lot about the animals. It was a really fun experience. I hope you Ihad a great week too See you soon,

Fayez

Lesson (3)

Read and match (A) with (B): 1 (c) 2-(e) 3-(a) 4-(f) 5-(d) 6-(b)

Read and complete the text:

1) dromedar.es 2) caravan 3) desert 4) water

Write the words in the correct column:

/ø/ (huge - fridge - dangerous - joke - age) /3/ (treasure - television - Asia - usually -

measure)

#### O Read the text and answer.

110 5 111 11 I the state of the first of the

#### @ Rearder the words.

Vice it is it is it A RECEPTION OF THE STATE STATE STATE

a pary terms and constant to price A - 1 WORD THE CLOTTE THE BELL

the hip has the amount of

, . Butto and there is a detailer and breat last when y from s

convexplore the invacious stends

## @punctuate the following sentences:

in the Edyption of mail disea that obtains Jak I KL.

. Lany o andpairt is overy Enday a se and played tead not your day

Annied Take was a femous ac or

b. A. A. Oper dat out Marco Polo , cytatre, dannie, me go cut

### 1465)

Read and match (A) with (B): 1 .. 2-(6) 3-(e) 4 (a) 5 (b)

#### Read the text and answer:

Violed. ∴ all serious maninaled Kareem.

4. Th. y were awesome. They were huge and the Reorder the words:

#### Reorder the words:

A pyent on a felucca on the River Nitel

5. A refuccia isn't made of metal

3. Kirm, was the captain of the boat

1. A te ucha is difficult to sai,

s the boat had two white sails

1 V. had unch on board the felucca.

\* Frad such a wonderful experience!

a-bid tou enjoy the top?

#### **Operation of the Properties of the Punctuate the following sentences:**

1- E. withe Pyramids of Giza 2-1, he dign't come with us,

3 II on Anna and Ran as bitt days are in

D: 1.1 1

4- A on a you want to eat?

files included with

#### Write an empt 1 (50) words

Te Father Comment

The state of the s

1 / the 1 more than the color Telety | consect the people tray |

eyonical toreas a dine or but Coulote to a city into a ling 5 y शारीकातात का वा लग्ना मेरि The confiferent are a set watto day

tion the time to a series and Villiante

1 10 1

#### Test (5) an unit (5)

#### Listen and choose.

1 wood 2- traditional 3- River little

#### Read and complete

explice colle, , , or comple

#### Choose the correct answer:

I what 2 disc you, 2 what 4 felucia

#### Read the text and answer

1/2

The trip to the fish and shey left in the morning stiff in a color and backnown at

4 They saw or ferry troums of the 200

1. The travelers found treasure last year

2- What types of aper als can you see?

3 Lacation research segment pests

#### Punctuate the following sentence:

No, I don't want to do to the club on Monday

#### Write an email of (50) words:

From allayance out

To pack whoth a kerm Subject of the street

Dear Jud

Did you know that archaeologists have tound an army faces in Egyns' Like the to no of Tor your which was filled with the treatment of the Value of the many tharaohs

were and the aid of the help us

learn more about an an Folip. The me more about your country sings lienes Write back soon. Ali

#### Test (10) on unit (5)

U Listen and choose:

1- Marco Polo 2- China 3- diary

2 Listen and complete:

1- objects 2- humans 3- sculptures

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- archaeologists 2 studied 3- caravan 1 come

Read and match (A) with (B):

1-(f) 2-(d) 3-(a) 4-(e) 5-(c)

S Read the text and answer: 1- trains

2- studies 3- It is traveling by au-

4- In the past, people travelled or root or horseback.

6 Reorder the words:

1- The museum had a lot of ancient objects from China.

2- Can you help me, please?

3- The scientists had an amazing experience.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: Are Dina and Yasmin good at planting trees?

8 Write a text of (50) words: "Deserts"

Deserts are places where it doesn't rain much There is little water. The we ather is very hot during the day and very coin at night. The sand dunes are big and can be hard to walk on Animals that we in deserts have special ways to stay cool and find water. People who is in deserts also have to be very careful to s' a safe

Read and match (A) with (B): 1-(f) 2-(d) 3 a) 3-e) 5 c

Read and complete the dialogue: nstructions - wax - paim trees - grams Choose the correct answer; 1- candes 100 7- Suchs 8- Such 5 Parti & work 7- survey 8- supp

Reorder the words:

1 Perfume c s smell love y 2- There in bittes : k. non on

3. We need one glass for each candle

4- Heat the wax to melt it.

5- Fdon't / Ke making candles. 6- What do we need to make candle, >

@ punctuate the following sentences: What do Lella and her mom make?

. Anmed is stich a dever student

Do you like pizza?

No, my morn can't drive cars.

It's very cold in January. Yes, but you don't need wax.

Lesson L

Read and complete the text: 2) depended 3; foods 1, Nile

Read and match (A) with (B): 3 , 3; 1 (6) 2-10)

Read and match (A) with (B):

2- (d) 3 (b)

Read and complete the dialogues:

2- How many 1- How much

3- How many 4- How many 5- How much

S Choose the correct answer:

1 How many

4- How many 3- How much A little

5- a lot or 6- a litter 7- How many 8- a lot of 9- How much 10- How much

11- a few 2- a nate 13- a few

14- How man; 15- How much 16 a few

17 a lot of 18 a little 19- any / some

20- a lot of 21 how many 22- any / some

23- How man, 2'- some 25 any

27 The eare 26- There is

29 There is 30 T ere are 31 How much

32- How many 33- rice 34- potatoes 35- butter

36- carrots 37- is 38- are 39 15 40- Are

#### Reorder the words:

I- Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies.

What did the Ancient Egyptians eat?
1- Most people in Ancient Egyptians eat?
1- Most people in Ancient Egyptiate a little

There were a lot of bees in A world Entitle to the court of the court

Princtuate the following sentences:

Alternative its of coffee does Ramy

The water of the Nile always help of the

A HUM much money do we need, Adel?

Yes, Samira plays tenns every Thursday.

Write an email of (50) words:

helping ny mom

menting to tell you about a meal I helped meal it was chicken, and it was delicious?

the started by of opping up some chicken, and opposes. Then we select up some of in a pan and cooked the cooken until it was browned. We some the vegetables and cooked them for text in a pan and text was browned. We sold them for text in a pan and make it.

to tack soon and tell me all about the

rest of the



(Read and match (A) with (B):

. 1 2- (a) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (c)

#### Reorder the words:

With this the king doing?

Per rives in a big palace

3-Ancre does Peter live?

time king wasn't happy

in A your the king leave the painting? what leve the dining room

\* Pront see growns and scepters.

When ares Peter find the king?

#### Answer Key

Punctuate the following sentences.

© Does Peter notice something strange?

Sturr in the type the so rooms

O Did you see the Moroccan king?

An in the type a tweet a clover

Do younder out the tweet.

Write a text of (50) words:
"A king I have read about"

Tead about a king named King
Tut inknamen. He reled in Adment Egypt a
really long time ago. He became king when
he was une allowed boy! I know that he had
a dolumn mark and lots of treasures in his
tomb. I think it's amazing that they
discove ad his territe litter many years. Hike
that he was a plur aich and had a cool
golden mark. An her t Egyptian stories are
really interesting.



Read and match (A) with (B): 1-d 2-c 3-e 4-a 5-f

Read and complete the text:

1) teeth 2) stick 3, tootopaste 4) powder

Read and complete the text:

1) mint 2) seeds 3) mixture 4) cool

Reorder the words:

1- Kapet was an expensive perfume in Ancient Egypt.

2- Cheaper perfumes had a lot of spices in them.

3- Do you like using perfumes?

4- The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.

5- The Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.

Write a text of (50) words:

"My personal care tools"

I take care of my body by washing my hands with soap and water, brushing my teeth with toothpaste and a toothbrush twice a day, and combing my hair with a hairbrush. I use shampoo to wash my hair. I put on perfume and deodorant to keep me smalling fresh.

#### O Read and complete the text

1) spices the dama do

#### Read and complete the text

1) perfume 2) cloth
3) souvenirs 4) tootists

#### Reorder the words:

1. He doesn't want to make sall dough

2- What would you make with salt dough?

3- We are having his together 4- What do we use for spices?

5- Egypt is famous for its spices.

6. We can use spices to make perhime.

7- What colors are they?

#### Read the text and answer:

1- dirty 2 four

3- They washed in the Nile River or in public bathhouses

4- They used essential ails and flower oils.

#### S Punctuate the following sentences:

1- What's Egypt famous for?

2- He's working on Fridays.

3- No. you're not coming with me.

4- Adel, Hazem, Qasem and Mustafa are my best friends

5- Does Sama like all her school subjects?

6- Basim and Karim are playing in the garden

#### Test (11) on unit (6)

Listen and choose:

h pot 3- expensive

#### Read and complete the dialogue:

1-hairbrush 2-toothbrush 3-soap

#### Choose the correct answer:

1- wax 2- palace 3- many 4- any

#### Read the text and answer:

1- patients 2- broad

3- She helps doctors and looks after sick people.

4- Because she always smiles at them and she loves them.

#### 6 Reorder the words:

1- How many lemons do we need?

2. Samuel has a bit of milk in hot his

3. Same those a new palace with his p

Punctuate the following sentence farmers are whether distinct afferent spin on in

Write a text of (50) words "Egyptian Haves"

Egyption species are famous all over the world. They are used in many distorent recipes. We don't only use "prine to a food. We also use them in portune, medicine, and to color cloth. Species are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the soular Faus. Species are one of the favority souveners that tourists huy when they visit Egypt.

#### Test (12) on unit (6)

#### ① Listen and choose:

1- a little 2- honey 3- danks

## Listen and complete the Contences 1 5.1 2 cloth 3 souvenirs

#### (1) Choose the correct answer:

1- a lot of 2- mint 3- 1 his h

#### Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (b)

#### S Read the text and answer:

1- tidy 2- interesting

3- Students have to follow their school rules

4- School teaches students how to be good people.

#### Reorder the words:

1- Stir the chocolate pieces into the mixture

2- There is a little shampoo.

3- How much oil do we need?

#### Punctuate the following sentence. Lenjoy this dishard Laypt and Moro aco

### Write an email of (50) words:

From: ramy@yahoo.com

To: bell@school.net

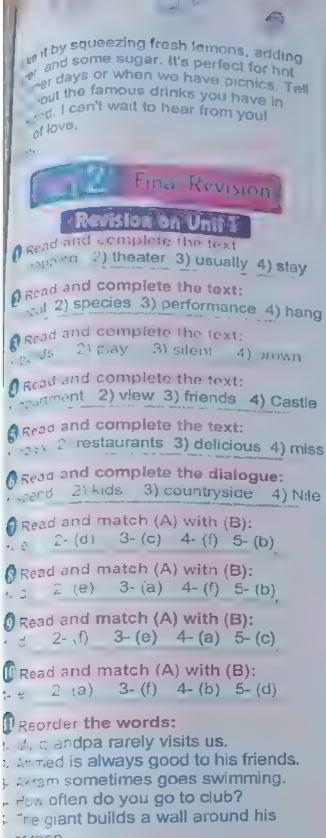
Subject: The famous drinks from my country!

Hi Bell,

How are you? I wanted to share some famous drinks from my country, Egypt. One famous drink is called "Lemonade", We

Step Ahead

Capitylands is used as puse



#### Reorder the words:

2. At Tied is always good to his friends.

Large sometimes goes swimming.

- How often do you go to club?

- Sne visits her grandma twice a week.

· You can hang out with your friends.

· We always plant trees.

. The High Line was a railway line.

Dees your garden produce a lot of regetables?

11- The people here are nice

12- How are things in Alexandria?

13- I often go there with my parents 14- You can walk through the gardens

15- Now York is very noisy all the time

16- Tell me all the news from home

17- We sometimes go to the movie theater

18- I usually spend time with my sisters

19- They live on a farm in the countryside.

20- What do you like about your neighborhood?

### Punctuate the following sentence:

1- New York has a lot of green spaces

2- I miss Egyptian food so much

3- Your new dress sounds great, Mariam.

4- How are things in Alexandria?

5. There are lot: of rest was them in a rout

6- What things does one mos about 25/11

7- Please write back soon. 8- How are things with you?

9- Is Ahmed good at planting trees?

10- Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better.

11- I don't know the names of Chinese

12- Samira's family lives in a tall building.

13- What's Wael's favorite place in Land

#### Choose the correct answer:

1-volunteers 2-miss 3-block 4-plant

5- Organic 6- harvest 7- grow 8- sell

9-fertilizer 10-clean 11-residents 12-floor

15- railway 13- selfish 14- green

#### 14 Choose the correct answer:

3- never, 4- is always 2- work

8- live 5- often 6- twice 7- rarely

11- are 12- has 10- do 9- get

15- usually has 14- have

17- are never 16- sometimes play

19- usually walk 18- never

20- always passes

22- always studies 23- often go

24- never gives

#### 15 Write a text of (50) words:

"A day with my friends" I had the best day with my friends! We went to the park and took the bus there.

We enjoyed playing on the swings and slides. We even had a picnic and ate

yummy sandwiches. We drank juice to stay hydrated When it was time to go home, we were fired but so happy I can't wait to have more fun days like this with my friends!

#### rest(1) on unit (1

- U Listen and choose.
- 1- plants 2- nature
- 3- wildlife
- 2 Listen and complete the sentences:
- 1- harvest
- 2- Roof
- 3- make
- 3 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- never 2- usually watch 3- selfish 4- after
- Read and match (A) with (B):
- 1-(d) 2-(a) 3-(e) 4-(b) 5-(c)
- S Read the text and answer:
- 1- Alexandria
- 2- three
- 3- He s 38 years o'd
- 4- He reaus useful stones to his children
- 6 Reorder the words:
- 1- His garden is usually beautiful.
- 2- People use the park for sports.
- ·3- There are tall trees in the garden.
- Punctuate the following sentence: What dish does immlike to have on Friday?
- Write ar a half of (50) words;

From: selim@hotmail.com

To: fady @butlook com Subject: My apartment

Hey Fady!

I wanted to le, you about my apartment. It's really cool! It's on the fourth floor. I have my own room with a big window. I love looking out and seeing the city. The living room is: relaxing, and we have a big TV for movie nights. In my neighborhood, there's a park nearby where I play with my friends. We also have a restaurant and a library. I love living here! Take care, Selim

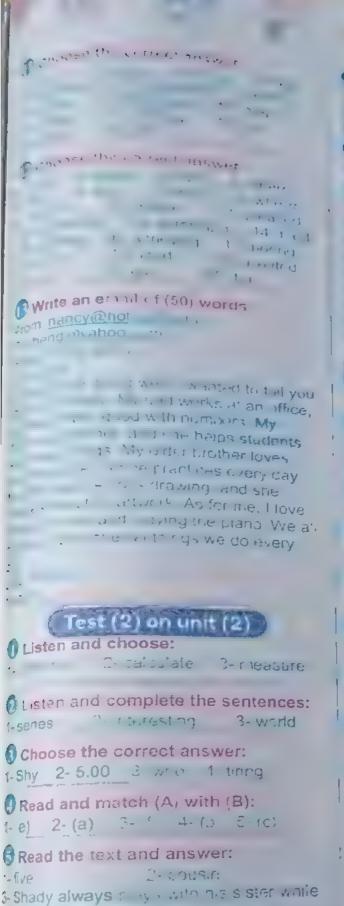
## Revision on Un

- O coad and complete the text:
- 1) which 2) takes 3) where 4) who
- Read and complete the text:

- 1) fur ' 2) touch nendy
- Read and complete the . . : 1) proud 2) buildings 3) 1 ap
- Read and complete the text;
- 1) stomach 2) carrots 3) noise 1 Har.
- Read and cor. plete the text:
- 2) ca tulate 1) classroom 4) measurements
- 3) paint Read and m tch (A) with (B):
- 3 (b) 4-(c) 5-(a) 1 (0) 2 (0)
- Read and match (A) with (B): 3- n) 4- (a) 5- (c) 1, 1)
- Read and match (A) with (B); 1-101 2 1 3 7, 4-10, 5-(b)
- Reorder the words:
- '- Doyoulare ally or books yet?
- 2- We all keep calm in the library.
- 3- How does Karima feel today?
- 4- I don't go to school on Fridays
- 5- Is everything OK?
- 6- This is the place where students study science.
- 7- These laboratories have all the equipment.
- 8- His birthday party was exciting.
- 9- These are the shoes which I wear to school.
- 10- When does Manal wake up for school?
- 11- Who is your math teacher?
- 12- We can share my books today.
- 13- Cats are my favorite pets.
- 14- Wandaland is a fantasy TV series

## Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- Welcome to our school, Hazem
- 2- Do you have all your books yet, Ahmed?
- 3- You're really organized, Basel.
- 4- Hove English and Arabic.
- 5- I love the story of Hare.
- 6- No, we don't need to get up early on Saturdays.
- 7- Lions are not frich my animals
- 8- Amira and Huga are going to school next Monday.
- 9- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- 10- Hello, my name is Hassan Alr.



she is cooking, in the distributing

Connect 6:

4 Dina. She hit Ayr . or in sinead A in t

() 12, (1 ·) To Martine to the second of th and the state of t Write it > "My pet" I has no than numbered part is northly a specific hame . Max & my day way to rick to cetting I make sure to feed time in Let 20 has from water later, by a her fig to keep timen an and happy atom May to make he shways there to play with the a site non-in teal cafe Helpita and frend a hid conjust a chart Revision on Unil 3 1) biking 2, helmet 3) book 4) tour 1) understand 2) details 3) background 4, action Read and complete the local 1, fantasy 2, exciting 3, ndes 4, theaters Read and complete the text 1) get up 2, at 3) brary 4' on St Read and match with the ... 1- (e) 2- (a) 3- (f) 4- (b) 5- (c) Read and match | Property Co., 1 (d) 2-(f) 3-(a) 4-(b) 5 c Read and match A A thilbs 1-(d) 2 (e) 3 (a) 4 (f 5-1c) Read and match (A. z. t' E) 1 (f) 2 (d) 3-(e) 4 (b) 5-(a) Regrace the words: 1- Little Deer runs through the forest 2- What do the girls do at Bab Z rwella? 3- What is the weather like on Sunday? 4- Should we explore the souks on

Monday?

5- I enjoy my time with my family a lot

6- Let's go to the Manial Palace Muse im.

7- I am really excited about our vacation.

- We can travel to Calro
- I'm excited about our varation this
- 10. The view from the top in beautiful
- 11. Lotton got up late on Sundays
- 12. We can go quad biking in the desert
- 13. Where will the guide most up?
- 14. What also can we do?
- 15 What lime do we got back?
- 18- The tour guide will meet us at the
- 17. Everyone is wearing holmets
- 18. I need my credit card to pay for the trekette

## Punctuate the following sentences:

- We colebrate Sham I I-Neasim in spring
- 2. My English always gets better if I practice
- J. How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus ?
- 4- How does a rollercoaster work?
- 5. They went on a trip to the Red Sen
- 6- I'm having a party next Thursday
- 7- Let's go lo Alexandria in August
- 8. Are there big parks in Cairo?
- 9. My brother doesn't like carnivals.
- 10- There are many buses from Luxor to Aswan

### Thoose the correct answer:

1- nde 2- concentrate 3- celebrate 4- having 5- get 6- take 7- switches off 8- heights 9- sunsel 10- plan 11- work 12- theater 13- climb 14- proud

### Choose the correct answer;

1- switches 2- visit 3 doesn't have 4 miss 6 go 7 don't hurry 8 can visit 9- ask 10- in 11- at 13- on 14- on

## (B) Write a text of (50) words:

#### "A week in Sharm El-Sheikh"

port a week in Gramm Er Sheikh with my in y we went to the beach every day and swam in the sea. We also went snorkeling and saw lots of fish and coral reefs. The sun and fresh air made me feel so happy and healthy. It was so much fun! I would definitely recommend Sharm El-Sheikh to anyone who wants to have a

#### great beach vacation I would back nomeday!

- 1 Liston and choose.
- 1. comomber
- D Listen and complete the sentence,
- 1 scered 2-climb
- Choose the correct ans were 1- cail 2 in 3- con go 4.
- Road and match (A) with (B) 1-(d) 2 (e) 3-(a) 4-(f) 5

#### () (read the text and answer:

- 1- winter
- 3. They come to enjoy the fine weath. sunshine of Fgypt when it is very co countries
- 4- They buy some souvenirs

#### Reorder the words:

- 1- Should Tamer go quad biking Wednesday?
- 2- Why do you like the park?
- 3- How can she climb up the h II?

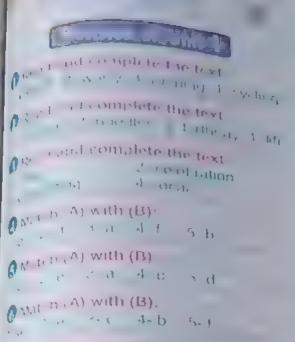
#### Punctuate the following sentence. Voties Mer j. "

#### Write an email of (50) words:

From: maged@gmail.com To: far d@yahoo com Subject: An article I read Hi Farid,

I hope this email finds you well

5 I was reading an article in the ne the other day about how to study First, make a study plan. This will to stay organized and make sure yo all the material. Find a quiet pla study. Take breaks. Studying for lo periods of time can affect you b. up and move around every 20 Get enough sleep. When you rested, you'll be better able to foc remember what you've studied Tell me your opinion on that topic See you soon, Maged



#### A Reorder the words.

por you can attend the party people are coming?

in a think up some balloons?

nor ow your phone, please?

in think the cake for the party?

poplaying footbar with the

Amira is reaching a book in an armchair an American you pass me the glue, please?

We are organizing a special day for the

10- Who is the birthday party for?

#### Punctuate the following sentences:

Do you often go to birthday parties?

2 What are you doing. Youssef?

3 We can ask Adel to make a playlist.

sont ike chocolate cake

5 Mr Yousry is blowing up the balloon.

6 We are practicing for the footbal game on Sunday.

7 Will you feed the cat, please?

8. We don't know how to make a cake.

9. Yes, Marwa bought a new car.

10 No, I don't think Heba will come.

#### Ochoose the correct answer: Vocab

1-celebration 2- blow out 3- community 4- et off 5- decorating 6- hanging up

7-sending 8- playlist 9- RSVP

10-about 11- Adults 12- guests

13-noodles 14- attend

# Chronettocon tener for a continue to formation of the state of the sta

#### Write a text of (50) world

Mother of the Cabitation
Every year we colode to the
Mother's Frie Wale tetracer is Mach
every year to a very happy day is dway
to y more a new percent is ilways goes her
flowers with the present Money every
happy on that tay We allow the that day
every year to a very happy day

#### Test (4) oil unit (4)

1- residing 2 agris 3 history

#### Read and complete the distoque

1- party 2- blow out 3 but.

#### 3 Choose the correct word (s):

1- burn 2- sending 3 s 4 1 k ng

#### Match (A) with (B):

1-e 2-d 3-f 4 a 5 c

#### S Read the text and answer the questions

1- games 2 Tuesday

3- Next Thursday

4- Ali her friends will come to the party

#### Reorder the words:

1- Display a poster on your classroom wall

2- Who is the invitation addressed to?

3- Amira is reading a book in an armuhair

#### Punctuate the following sentences:

- Are there any special birthday traditions in Egypt?

#### 8 Write a text of (50) words:

"A present you received on your birthday"
I celebrate my birthday every year I
always have a party on that day. Lots of
people give me presents on that day. But

last year I received the best present I have been given ever. My dod gave me a new smart phone. It was modern and wonderful. I was very happy. I took lots of pictures with it on that day

- (Fil)

( , , of total

6 . Profession text 1 .

1 111 1 5, Bette arm 1 11

SR all a hard h (A) with (B)

(B). The same of the sa

Read the mouth (A) with (B). 

abic with course a 18

1. I Well a "c". The Blue Mile

2. How dies the control me inplant of

3- What do do water think of the great pyram is'

4. We stor thought a sor coin redible.

5. The ship wild are within the siln comes

There was good across from the captain.

:- Time scenns to achie very slowly in this

8- I went for long walks around the snip

9- How does the writer spend his time in the day'

10- I can explore if emysterious is and

Punctuate he following sentences:

1. owidces the arter dos and the island? 2- The water in the sea wash' warm.

3- nich giptian animal nors it look like? 4. ader and initial ware in my class last

5- e had a great time at the comiza. the lok people's tools were made of stone

7- I id uncle i azem have to Engand last.

8- es thats rue

C. Minters in falt west or and.

1 Haven a mouth by hed young 1-417

Choose the contract of t could be a coplored to plored to the coplored to the coplore iduty to some 11 solution of treasure Harmiten Pr Aas of dillet In an aread 17 excessive

Choose the corr of the man I have the sale of Was 7 atch 8 didn't go to read to win 11 Were 12 toll 15 Sailed 14 (14) 1 5 16 (10)

Write a text of (50) word . "An amazing journey"

I had an ama rag jo uney to Cairo and Or a with my family it was amazing because we saw the pyramids the Sphinx. and the Egyptian Museum. We also spent time exploring the couks and markets it brought some souvreins from Khan El Rhalifi We visited Cairo Lower We saw the River Nile from its top. We had a sot of fun:

Listen and choose.

1- archaeologists 2- tarming 3- advanced

Disten and complete the sentences:

1- cabin 2 ship 3- captain

Choose the correct answer:

1- Archaeologists 2 sails 3 Was 4- have

Read and match (A) with (P)

1 (e) 2 (a) 3 (f) 4 (b) 5- (d)

Read the text and answer:

1- the box 2- after

3. His wife woke him

4- No, ne was dreaming

Reorder the words.

1- What does the desert look I ke?

2- I am studying hard at the moment

3 What is the weather like in Alexandria?

Punctuate the following ventence:

My friend Asser is organizing a big party next

## Write an email of (50) words:

grom amgad@gmail.com To ant Coullock.com subject: A day in my diary

HI ATT hope this email finds you well m writing to tell you about my day esterday. I woke up at 7:00 am and had neskfast with my family. Then, I went to school and had classes until 3:00 pm. After school, I went to the library to study for a ist I finished studying at 6:00 pm and went home to eat dinner. I watched TV for while and then went to bed at 11:00 pm. I was a pretty normal day, but I'm glad I got to spend some time with my family and

How was your day? Talk to you soon, Amgad

#### Revision on Unit 6

- Read and complete the text: 1-oils 2-roots 3-protects 4-healthy
- Read and complete the text: 1-bees 2-honey 3-dates 4- drinks
- Read and complete the text: 1-perfumes 2- expensive 3- herbs 4- mint
- Read and complete the text: 1-spices 2- taste 3- preserve 4- jars
- Match (A) with (B): 1-1 2-c 3-a 4-e 5- b
- () Reorder the words:
- 1- Ancient Egyptians liked to eat well.
- 2- We need a few lemons for the recipe.
- 3-1 like a lot of milk in my tea.
- 4- We use spices to cook food.
- 5- Spices are sold in stores.
- 6- Tourists buy souvenirs when they visit
- 7- Their toothpaste had salt and pepper in
- 8- Is there any butter in the bowl?
- 9- There's a little money in my mom's bag.
- 10- There are some students in the laboratory.

#### Answer Key

#### Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 There isn't any bread in the kitchen. 2. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.
- 3. How did some leaders in Ancient Egypt use kapet
- 4. How much milk does Hend want in your coffee.
- 5. Mint tea is a traditional drink in north Africa.
- 6. Do you always brush your teeth?
- 7. Not am not going to brush my teeth.
- 8. Omar works in a bakery next to our house,

#### Choose the correct answer: Vocab

- 1- secret 2- squeeze 3- Heat 4- souvenirs 5- soap 6- spices 7- smells 8- pour 9- care 10- stores 11- crown 12- astonished
- Ochoose the correct answer: Grammar 1- much 2- some 3- much 4- a little 5- lemons 6- few 7- some 8- some 9- many 10- much 11- are 12- is 13- some 14- a lot

#### Test (6) on unit (6)

- Listen and choose the correct word: 1- palace 2- caretakers 3- mysterious
- Read and complete the dialogue: 2- restaurants 3- recipes
- Choose the correct word (s):
- 1- famous 2- mint 3- spices 4- isn't
- Match (A) witsh (B):
- 1-e 2-f 3-a 4-b 5- d
- Read the text and answer the questions:
- 2- walked 1- home
- 3- Ten. 4- Because he felt tired.

#### Reorder the words:

- 1- How much homework did you do yesterday?
- 2- Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies.
- 3- Where does Peter find the king?
- Punctuate the following sentences: - What did Ancient Egyptians use to take care of themselves?

93

#### Answer Key

Write an email of (50) words:

From: maged@gmail.com To seliminyahoo.com

Subject: Personal care routines Dear Selm.

How are you and your family? I hope you are well. I'm pleased to write to you now. I'm writing to tell you about my personal care routines. The most important is washing my hands before and after having meals. I also brush my teeth twice a day. I brush my hair regularly. And of course have a shower or a bath from time to time. I use shampoo, soap, toothpaste, toothbrush and a hairbrush. Lats of lave

Magda

## am 3 School Exams

Listen and choose:

1- organization 2- nature

Listen and complete the sentences; 1- harvest 2- Roof

3- make Choose the correct answer:

1- helpful 2- on 3- much 4- railway

Read and match (A) with (B): 1-(e) 2-(d) 3-(a) 4-(f) 5-(b)

S Read the text and answer:

1- quiet 2- happy

3- They lived in small houses.

4- No, there wasn't.

Reorder the words:

1- I buy a lot of personal care products.

2- Do you want to come to my house?

3- Mariam doesn't like eating fast food.

Punctuate the following sentence: Do you like reading books?

Write a text of (50) words:

"How did Ancient Egyptians like to be clean?"

The Ancient Egyptians liked to be clean in different ways. They loved using perfumes hat smelled strong and nice. They even and special oils for their skin. To clean neir teeth, the Ancient Egyptians used a

type of toothbrush - a stick with small praces of papyrus tied to it at one end They liked to wash themselves in the Hive Nile.

Listen and choose: 1- products 2- perfume 3- expensive

Listen and complete the sentences 3- running 2- book 1- exams

Choose the correct answer: 1- eat 2- sharp 3- wearing 4- helpful

Read and match (A) with (B): 1-(d) 2-(f) 3-(a) 4-(e) 5-(b)

Read the text and answer:

1- windy 2- sunny

3- It's very hot in the summer. 4- Yes, it is,

Reorder the words:

1- Adel is not a nervous person.

2- Can you help me, please?

3- Where does Peter find the king?

Punctuate the following sentence: Mohamed Salah is a great footballer

Write an email of (50) words:

From: mazen@school.net

To: omar@hotmail.com

Subject: Amazing summer adventures in Sharm El-Sheikhl

Dear Omarl

I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you all about my awesome summer holiday in Sharm El-Shelkh. We visited the beautiful Ras Mohammed National Park and saw colorful fish and coral reefs while snorkeling. We also tried delicious local food. My whole family enjoyed the trip with me, but I missed you a lot! I can't wait to catch up and hear about your summer tool Lots of love. Mazen

U Listen and choose:

1- soft 2- clean 3- claws

Listen and complete the sentences: 1- cakes 2- candles 3- present

Choose the correct answer: desovery 3- rarely visit 4- playlist

O Read and match (A) with (B): (d) 3-(a) 4-(e) 5-(b)

Oread the text and answer Shinkley 2- morning holses ne will be able to buy a cart and not have different kinds of fruit and different kinds of fruit and

Reorder the words: rewoften de you eat cheese? th and didn't go to his work yesterday. work yest

punctuate the following sentence: At I don't like these toys.

Write a text of (50) words: Having fun at the community garden" and so much fun at the community We planted lots of cool stuff, like protos and peppers. It's great to have pron spaces in our neighborhood. We how to take care of plants and them grow. When they were we picked fresh tomatoes and was awesome to eat food we ourselves. Community gardens are

#### Test (4)

Disten and choose:

2- China (Italian

3- century

Listen and complete the sentences:

1-0115

2- dirt 3- shiny

Choose the correct answer:

I-ballnons 2- Are 3- make 4- a few

Read and match (A) with (B):

3-(f) 4-(e) 5-(b) · (a) 2- (a)

Read the text and answer:

2- cheaper 1-smaller

3-The first plane was made in 1903.

4 Some people think that traveling by plane is not safe.

### Answer Key

Reorder the words

1- I'm studying hard for my exams at the

2- English is my favorite school subject.

1- We can climb up this tree

Punctuate the following sentence: Let's watch a movie together

Write an email of (50) words:

From osama@school.net

To: amr@hotmail.com

Subject: A book I read about Marco Polo HI Amri

I just finished reading this awasoms book about Marco Polo, and I couldn't wait to tell you about it! Marco explored so many cool places, like China and India. I liked that he traveled a lot and brought back stories of new cultures and amazing treasures. He had a very exciting adventure! You should definitely read this book too.

Lots of love. Osama

#### Test (5)

Listen and choose:

1- bodies 2- Nile 3- beans

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

1- countries 2- plants 3- roofs

Choose the correct answer:

1- How often 2-climb 3- who 4- Perfume

Read and match (A) with (B):

1-(e) 2-(f) 3-(b) 4-(c) 5-(a)

S Read the text and answer:

2- nice 1- farm

3- The farmers' sons were helping them with their work.

4- They grow vegetables and fruit

6 Reorder the words:

1- I don't like making candles.

2- My sister always eats a healthy breakfast.

3- There are many cars in New York.

Punctuate the following sentence: Which area of Egypt produces the most wheat?

#### **Answer Key**

#### Write a text of (50) words: "A visit to the zoo"

Last week, my family and I went to the zool We drove there in our car and packed a yummy lunch. I saw so many cool animals like llons, monkeys, and giraffes. We even got to feed the elephants! It was so much fun watching them play. I learned a lot about different animals and their habitats. can't wait to go back to the zoo again soon!

#### Test (6

Listen and choose:

1- forests 2- data

3- volunteers

2 Listen and complete the sentences: 1- move 2- different 3- friends

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- Are there 2- didn't speak 3- shed 4- soft

Read and match (A) with (B): 1- (c) 2- (e) 3- (b) 4- (f) 5- (a)

S Read the text and answer:

1- coffee 2- thousand

3- Coffee grew first in Ethiopia.

4- Arab travelers took the coffee plant to Egypt and other Arab countries.

#### Reorder the words:

1- Peter lives in a big palace.

2- Do you like using perfumes?

3- My dad works in a factory.

Punctuate the following sentence: My friend All and I went on a trip.

Write an email of (50) words:

From: nadia@school.net To: salma@hotmail.com

Subject: Fun weekend adventures!

Hey Salmal

I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you all about my exciting weekend. On Saturday, my family and I went to the park. We had a picnic and played games like hide-and-seek and football. It was so much fun! On Sunday, we went to the movie theater and watched a cool superhero movie. We also had ice cream afterward. It was the best weekend ever! I can't wait to hear about your weekend too. Take care,

Listen and choose:

Nadia

2- rollercoaster

3- eat

1- family D Listen and complete the sentences 2- sit 1- playground

Choose the correct answer:

1-exciting 2-went 3-but 4-blow-up

Read and match (A) with (B): 1-(d) 2-(f) 3-(e) 4-(b) 5-(a)

6 Read the text and answer:

2- bins 1- parks

3- Some children pick flowers and walk on grass.

4- So we can enjoy them at any time.

6 Reorder the words:

1- How often do you go to the dentist?

2- I'm surprised to see you here!

3- My uncle works in a hospital.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: He's going to Aswan on Thursday.

Write a text of (50) words: "After-school activities"

After school, I do my homework, It's important to finish it before anything else. Then I watch TV for a little while. Sometimes, my mom takes me to the club, where I play games with my friends. We have dinner together. My favorite part is when we eat dessert! After that, it's time to go to bed and sleep. I love my after-school activities!